

30 Hour CLIVE PRIGMORE BASIC

BBC

NEC

COMMODORE 64 EDITION

**THE COMPUTER PROGRAMME BBC TV
NATIONAL EXTENSION COLLEGE**



NATIONAL EXTENSION COLLEGE

30 Hour BASIC

by
Clive Prigmore
(Orpington College of Further Education)
adapted for the Commodore 64 by Paul Shreeve

**NATIONAL EXTENSION COLLEGE CORRESPONDENCE
TEXTS**

COURSE NUMBER M27C

ISBN 0 86082 455 1

© NATIONAL EXTENSION COLLEGE TRUST LIMITED 1981.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission of the publisher.

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, re-sold, hired out, or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior consent in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

Contents

How to use this course	5
Unit 1 Simple statements and commands	7
Unit 2 Making decisions	35
Unit 3 Strings	63
Unit 4 Lists	93
Unit 5 An end to strings and PRINT	119
Unit 6 Mainly about dice and games	145
Unit 7 Sound, colour and graphics	173
Unit 8 Handling numbers	199
Unit 9 An introduction to data processing	229
Unit 10 File handling	255

How to use this course

Aims of the course

Quite simply, to help you learn to use your BBC or Acorn Electron microcomputer with confidence. To do that you need to master three things: (a) the BASIC language; (b) planning good program structures; and (c) using the keyboard. This course teaches you the first two. Your computer will teach you the third!

30 Hour BASIC isn't all there is to know about BASIC but it does cover all the essentials as implemented on the BBC and Acorn Electron microcomputers. Once you've completed the course, you will be ready to use a textbook on BASIC or for the second stage BASIC course, M034 Structured Programming in BASIC, which is available from NEC.

Do I need a microcomputer?

You can do this course whether or not you have a microcomputer, although it will be of more use to you if you can use a Commodore 64 since the course material is designed particularly to apply to that machine. All you have to do is choose one of the following ways of working through the course:

Self-instructional use: With a microcomputer: do all the Exercises and self-assessment questions (SAQ's) and key in all the programs marked [K]. Without a microcomputer: do all the Exercises and SAQ's but omit the items marked [K].

FlexiStudy use: With your own microcomputer: do all the exercises and SAQ's at home and key in at home all the programs marked [K]. Test your assignment answers on your own microcomputer. Then take/send your problems to your local FlexiStudy centre. Without your own microcomputer: do all the Exercises and SAQ's but ignore the items marked [K]. Then do the assignment questions and take these to your local FlexiStudy centre to run on their microcomputers.

NEC correspondence student: With your own microcomputer: do all the Exercises and SAQ's at home and key in all the items marked [K]. Test your assignments on your own microcomputer before sending them to your NEC correspondence tutor. If the assignment programs don't run properly, tell your tutor what response you are getting from your microcomputer. Without your own microcomputer: do all the Exercises and SAQ's at home but ignore the items marked [K]. Do the assignment questions and post there to your NEC tutor.

Structure of the course

The course is in ten Units (See Contents). Each Unit includes:

Examples: These are problems which we solve completely for you in the text.

Self Assessment Question (SAQ's): We ask you to stop and quickly check that you have understood a new idea that we have introduced. Answers to these always appear at the end of the Unit in which the SAQ occurs.

Exercises: These are longer problems for you to try. Answers appear at the end of the Unit in which the Exercise occurs.

[K] which stands for key. This is where we think you could find it helpful to key a program into your own Commodore 64 microcomputer.

Assignment: These are questions for you to answer and send to your tutor for marking and comment. There are no answers to these in the course.

UNIT 1

Simple statements and commands

1.1	What does a computer do?	8
1.2	What is a computer?	8
1.3	What is BASIC?	10
1.4	A simple problem	10
1.5	Statement numbers	12
1.6	Execution and commands	14
1.7	Execution and data	16
1.8	INPUT, PRINT and LET	17
1.9	Store locations	19
1.10	Copying and overwriting	21
1.11	Arithmetic operators	23
1.12	Numerical constants	26
1.13	The remark statement: REM	27
1.14	More complicated arithmetic	28
1.15	Literal printing	28
	Assignment 1	30
	Objectives of Unit 1	31
	Answers to SAQ's and Exercises	31

1.1 What does a computer do?

In broad terms, a computer is a machine which helps us to solve certain kinds of problems. These usually involve symbols or characters which are familiar to us through every day use, e.g. letters of the alphabet (capital and lower case), numbers, punctuation marks and some special characters such as +, #, ★. The computer allows us to put in one set of symbols or characters and get out a different but related set. If this seems very vague and too general, let's consider some specific examples.

CHARACTERS IN	CHARACTERS OUT
Numbers representing the size of a window.	Cost of double glazing.
List of books borrowed from a library.	List of those books overdue.
<i>A person's name.</i>	<i>The person's telephone number.</i>
Standard notation for a move in a game of chess.	Picture of the chess board with the move accomplished.
Number representing height and acceleration.	Picture of lunar lander.
Pre-determined codes.	Musical sounds.

Figure 1 Some uses of a computer

This course is not about how the computer does these things but about how you can get it to do them by giving it the right instructions. We shan't therefore be going into any detail of the insides of a computer but you will find it helpful to know which are the major parts of a computer. This is quickly dealt with in the next section.

1.2 What is a computer?

A simple model of a computer is shown in Figure 2.

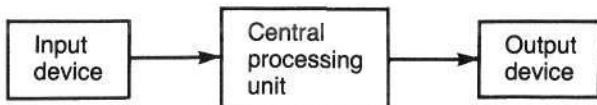


Figure 2 A simple model of a computer

You can see that there are three main parts to a computer:

- 1 The input device which allows you to enter either instructions or data (information) into the computer. On a microcomputer the input device is a keyboard which looks like a typewriter.

- 2 The central processing unit (CPU) which, amongst other things, carries out the instructions you have put in. This processing results in a modification of your data giving you the 'answer' or output that you require.
- 3 An output device which enables you to receive the result of the processing. The output device might be a television screen displaying the output or a printer which actually prints the output onto paper.

All this may sound very mundane. Indeed it would be were it not for the three key characteristics of a computer: (a) its capacity to store very large quantities of data which (b) it is able to process very rapidly and (c) its capacity to store a program which controls its own operation. This last characteristic is by far the most important one and is the one we are going to cover in this course.

Backing store

We shall just mention one other technical detail before looking at programming. If you are using this course you are likely to own or use a microcomputer with a small internal storage capacity. It uses that storage to keep its main running instructions plus the details of the problem it is currently solving. The latter details are erased when you switch the machine off so, if you want to keep your program data, you have to keep them in a backing store: a separate storage system that you can link to the computer as needed. On small systems this will be an ordinary audio cassette tape and on larger systems, a magnetic disc store. The Commodore 64 uses a special tape deck (model C2N). It is not possible to use an ordinary domestic tape recorder.

So, to summarise, the main elements of a computer system are illustrated in Figure 3.

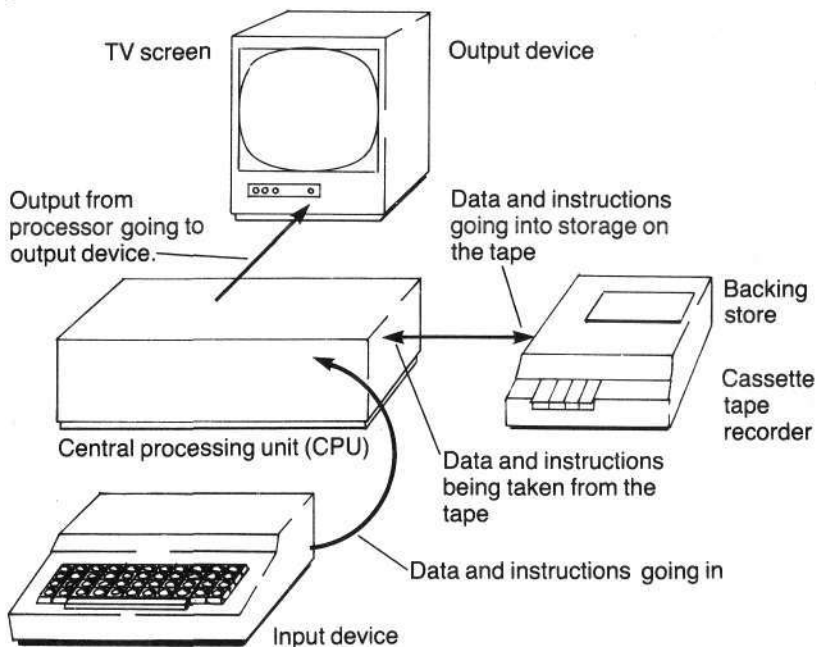


Figure 3 A typical computer system

1.3 What is BASIC?

A computer is an electronic device which processes patterns of electrical signals. If you had a problem, you wouldn't be able to feed it into the computer as electrical signals. Nor, if the computer was ready to give you an output, would you be able to understand it if it came as electrical signals. So the computer has a machine code inside it (put there by the manufacturer) to enable it to understand a programming code that you can understand. Machine codes are called low-level programming languages and correspond directly with the patterns of electrical signals in the computer. For obvious reasons, this program is called an interpreter. This course teaches you BASIC which is a high-level programming language. You will then be able to use BASIC to program any computer that contains a BASIC interpreter. BASIC, by the way, stands for Beginners' All-purpose Symbolic Instruction Code.

You may find it useful to note the sequence of events that is taking place when you program a computer.

- 1 You have a problem.
- 2 You break down the problem into steps which can be put into BASIC.
- 3 You write the program in BASIC.
- 4 You sit at a keyboard and enter your program into the computer.
- 5 The computer interprets your BASIC instructions into its own code and processes them.
- 6 The computer prints out the results in the form you specified in the program.

And that is all you need to know about what a computer is. From now on we will assume that all you want to do is to give the computer problems and to get back results so now let's move on to a simple problem which we might want to give to a computer.

1.4 A simple problem

The main activity of programming is breaking down the solution to a problem into simple steps which can be represented by BASIC programming statements.

Imagine that you are playing the part of a computer with a young child. The child might give you two numbers and ask you to tell him their sum. After a short time the child will naturally try you out with large numbers which you cannot add in your head, so you will have to have a paper and pencil at hand. The following could be a typical dialogue.

CHILD: 'Start'

YOU: 'Give me the first number'

CHILD '12157'

(You write this number on a piece of paper)

YOU: 'Give me the second number'

CHILD: '7896'

(You write the second number on the piece of paper)

(You perform the addition sum)

YOU: '20053'

We could describe the computer's part in this process more formally in the following way:

- 1 Input the first number
- 2 Input the second number
- 3 Add the two numbers
- 4 Output the result

Figure 4 Computer processes in adding two numbers

By this simple analogy we have arrived at a strategy for solving this problem. Broadly speaking, phases 1 and 2 would be concerned with entering numbers into the computer, phase 3 would involve a process in the central processing unit, while phase 4 would involve the output device.

Now, although we have not taught you any BASIC programming yet, we are going to show you what the problem solving sequence would look like when written in BASIC.

Example 1

Write a BASIC program to enter two numbers into the computer and to output their sum.

Solution

We have already worked out an intuitive procedure to solve this problem in Figure 4. A program in BASIC would have the following form.*

```
10 INPUT FIRST
20 INPUT SEC
30 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
40 PRINT SUM
50 END†
```

Program 1

We do not wish to concentrate on the details of the program at this stage, but hope that you can see, without stretching the imagination too far, how the strategy from Figure 4 has been changed into a program. A program then is a 'sequence of instructions composed for solving a given problem by computer'.

SAQ 1

We now come to the first point in the course at which we want you to check your progress through trying this Self-Assessment Question (SAQ). The SAQs are designed to help you find out whether or not you have understood the immediately preceding sections of the course. In each case, the answer to an SAQ appears at the end of the Unit in which the SAQ occurs. If you get all the answers right, just move on to the next section. If you get any wrong, check back to see where you have gone wrong.

† END is not needed on all computers, and it may be omitted from programs on the Commodore 64 computer.

Select those phrases from list B which complete correctly the phrases given in A.

A

- 1 The CPU . . .
- 2 The main characteristics of a computer system are . . .
- 3 A machine code is . . .
- 4 A machine code is an example of a . . . language.
- 5 BASIC is an example of a . . . language.
- 6 A BASIC interpreter . . .
- 7 A computer program is . . .

B

- (a) low-level
- (b) high-level
- (c) . . . holds data and instructions, controls its own processing, and controls the operation of input and output devices.
- (d) . . . a series of instructions or procedural steps for the solution of a specific problem.
- (e) . . . that it is capable of storing large quantities of data, is able to process this data very rapidly and lastly that it is able to store a program which controls its own operation.
- (f) . . . translates code written in BASIC into machine code.
- (g) . . . a code which corresponds directly with the electrical patterns within a computer.

1.5 Statement numbers

Let's have a closer look at Program 1 again:

```
10 INPUT FIRST
20 INPUT SEC
30 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
40 PRINT SUM
50 END
```

Program 1 (from p11)

We have said that a program is a sequence of instructions. In the program above each line is an instruction. Thus:

```
10 INPUT FIRST
is the first instruction of the program, and
50 END
```

is the last. Instructions in a programming language are sometimes called statements. We will use the two words synonymously.

Entering statements

Until later in the course, we shall restrict ourselves to one instruction per line. When sitting at the keyboard of your Commodore 64 micro, the actual process of entering a statement is completed only after the RETURN key has been pressed. So what happens is: You type 10 INPUT FIRST then press RETURN. Then type 20 INPUT SEC and press RETURN etc . . .

```
You see on the screen  10 INPUT FIRST
                      20 INPUT SEC
                      30
```

You will have noticed that each line begins with a number. These must be whole numbers in the range 1–9999, and they determine the order in which the instructions are processed (executed), i.e. they define the 'sequence' of the instructions. The execution of the instructions starts with the line of the lowest number, and continues in the sense of increasing numbers until instructed otherwise, or until the end of the program is reached. (More about 'until instructed otherwise' and 'ending', later.)

Why then, you may ask, was the program not written as follows?

```
1 INPUT FIRST
2 INPUT SEC
3 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
4 PRINT SUM
5 END
```

Program 2

Why not indeed! The program would have done the job perfectly well! However, as you will soon find out when writing programs you need a certain amount of flexibility. In particular you need the opportunity to slip into the program a statement which you have overlooked, or one which will allow you to make an important modification. Numbering our lines 10, 20, 30 and 40 leaves 9 empty lines between statements which may be used to correct or modify the program. When running, the processing proceeds to the next highest line number of the program, so the gap of 9 unused line numbers does not slow down the program execution in any way.

SAQ 2

Look at the line numbers in the following programs and decide which programs would produce a correct sum of FIRST and SEC.

- (a) 11 INPUT FIRST
59 INPUT SEC
93 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
401 PRINT SUM
500 END
- (b) 23 INPUT FIRST
32 INPUT SEC
49 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
40 PRINT SUM
50 END
- (c) 10 INPUT FIRST
20 INPUT SEC
15 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
40 PRINT SUM
50 END
- (d) 100 INPUT FIRST

```
200 INPUT SEC
110 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
190 PRINT SUM
220 END
```

- (e) 100 INPUT FIRST
50 INPUT SEC
407 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
902 PRINT SUM
1000 END

Programs 3—7

1.6 Executions and commands

The command RUN

Execution? No, it's not the end but the beginning! Let's get on and run our first program before we get tired of it!

```
10 INPUT FIRST
20 INPUT SEC
30 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
40 PRINT SUM
50 END
```

Program 1 (from p11)

And what happens? Nothing. This is because the computer is waiting for us to give instructions to the program as a whole. If you want to execute this program, you must give it the command RUN. This you put on a new line as follows:

```
10 INPUT FIRST
20 INPUT SEC
30 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
40 PRINT SUM
50 END
RUN
```

Program 1 (from p11)

(Don't worry about RUN not having a line number – we'll explain that shortly.)

Then press the RETURN key. You will see ? on the screen which is the computer's way of asking for data. Give it your first number; then press RETURN; another ? appears because the computer needs your second number. Give it the second number and press RETURN. The answer should now appear. Here is our version of this run:

```
10 INPUT FIRST
20 INPUT SEC
30 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
40 PRINT SUM
50 END
RUN
? 12157
```


? 7896
20053

READY

Figure 5 A complete run of a program

What we are doing therefore is to distinguish between the entry of a program and its execution. Let's go back to the dialogue between you and the child playing computers. A very explicit infant may have said 'I am going to give you two numbers, I want you to write them down, add them together, and then tell me their sum'. At this point you know exactly what to do, but you haven't yet done anything. You've got the instructions though, you've been programmed. The dialogue may proceed thus:

CHILD: 'Start'
YOU: 'Give me the first number'.
CHILD: '12 157'
YOU: 'Give me the second number'.
CHILD: '7896'
YOU: '20053'

Now these instructions have been carried out (run). A program then is just a set of instructions for the computer. When the program is run or executed these instructions are carried out.

Other commands: LIST, SAVE, LOAD

RUN is not the only command which you can give to a program as a whole. You can also use LIST, SAVE and LOAD as follows.

LIST

For example, you may spend quite a lot of time typing a program into your machine and during that process make several corrections. You may then wish to see a fair copy of the program as a whole on the screen. If you type the word LIST, a complete copy of the program in line number order will appear on the screen.

SAVE

Having developed a program to a satisfactory stage you may wish to take a copy of it on to tape or disc; the word SAVE will do this for you. (Your computer will, of course, have to be connected to a back-up store such as The C2N data recorder.)

LOAD

Later you may wish to use one of your stored programs; the command LOAD will enter the program from your back-up store back into your computer.

Words like LIST, RUN, SAVE and LOAD which allow us to handle the program as a single entity are called commands and are provided by the BASIC interpreter. A command occupies a line on its own and generally does not have a line number, e.g. the word RUN after line 50 causes the program to start to execute, and is equivalent to the child's command 'start' in the dialogue above. Commands will be discussed in greater detail in a later unit, but the four that we have already looked at will allow us to get by for a start.

Computer response

After a command has been successfully carried out the interpreter informs the user of this fact by writing a symbol on the screen, e.g.

> —

(the underline will flash on and off)

1.7 Execution and data

You will have realised that we have written a program which will add any two numbers in a quite general way, for it is immaterial to the program what numbers we enter when we receive prompts ? on the screen. As the computer executes the program it must be able to request that we input actual numbers for its particular task, i.e. *it must have the facility to demand specific data to do the job in hand*. You need to be able to distinguish clearly between the program, as a set of more or less general instructions, and the data which are the actual numbers which must be input when the program is executing, in order to solve a particular problem. You can, of course, run your program repeatedly with many pairs of numbers, as you will see later.

Another way of looking at these instructions is to visualize the situation as an umpire gathers the runners at the start of a race in order to give them certain instructions: 'Go down the right-hand side of the field to the furthest corner, over the stile and turn left down the lane . . .' The umpire's instructions are analogous to a program. If the runners understand what he is saying then they know what to do; but they are still at the starting line. They haven't actually started. This is analogous to the program having been entered into the machine. Then the umpire says 'Go!' and the race starts. This is analogous to the computer starting to execute the program. Let's extend the analogy and consider the cross-country race as a novelty race. Imagine that the umpire did not give enough instructions for the runners to complete the course but he said something like 'When you get to the bottom of the lane you will find further instructions pinned to the oak tree . . .' These instructions should be sufficient to guide the runners over the next part of the course, i.e. on to the next clue, and so on until the end of the race. These clues are analogous to giving the program more data during the course of its execution. This analogy may help you to see the important distinction between entering a program into the machine, executing the program, and then inputting data during the course of its execution.

SAQ 3

Below is a print out from a computer. It contains keywords, commands, responses from the system and items of data. It also contains sections that are concerned with entry, execution and listing. Identify as many of these items as possible as follows:

Mark keywords with	K
Mark commands with	C
Mark system responses with	R
Mark data items with	D

Bracket lines concerned with entry
Bracket lines concerned with execution
Bracket lines concerned with list

See 1.19 (p.19) to find out why we cannot use SECOND as a variable name.

```
10 INPUT FIRST
20 INPUT SEC
30 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
40 PRINT SUM
50 END
```

```
RUN
? -37
? -46
-83
READY
LIST
```

```
10 INPUT FIRST
20 INPUT SEC
30 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
40 PRINT SUM
50 END
```

```
READY
```

```
RUN
? 12.83
? 48.95
  61.78
```

Program 1 (from p11)

1.8 INPUT, PRINT and LET

You have seen that a program is a sequence of statements, and we have given you an intuitive idea of how each statement works. You may also have noticed that each of the three types of statement used so far (INPUT, LET and PRINT) corresponds to one of the three main devices which comprise the computer system (input, central processor and output devices). We will now look at each statement in more detail.

INPUT

The word INPUT is a signal to the computer that during execution, an item of data must be entered at the input device. We saw this happen when we ran our first

program: after the ? we entered 12157, pressed RETURN to complete the input procedure and then found ourselves confronted by another ? requesting the input of the next number. What, then, happened to 12157, the first item of data? The answer is that it has been stored for later use in the program's execution in the storage location labelled FIRST. The word FIRST has two main functions in the program, (a) when written and later referred to by the programmer it reminds him that at this point in the program the first item of data should be input, and (b) when written in the statement 10 INPUT FIRST the word FIRST is the name or label of a location in the computer's memory. So 10 INPUT FIRST means enter a number at the input device and store it in the location labelled FIRST .

PRINT

The statement 40 PRINT SUM has almost the reverse effect to statements 10 and 20, in that it allows us to output information from the machine. It is a signal to the machine to take a copy of the contents of the store location labelled SUM and pass it to the output device which for most users of this course will be a television screen. Notice that PRINT will literally result in a printed output if a printer is attached to your microcomputer but you still use the command PRINT when your microcomputer is attached to a television set for its output device.

LET

20 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC is an example of an assignment statement. It is in this type of statement that the processing takes place. As you can see, it is a mixture of store names (SUM, FIRST, SEC) and arithmetic operators (= and +). If you read it forwards, it says.

Let the store location SUM be made equal to the contents of the location FIRST added to the contents of the location named SEC.

However, like many mathematical expressions, it is often clearer when read from right to left of the '=' as follows

Add the contents of the location FIRST to the contents of the location SEC and store the result in the location labelled SUM.

Generally the assignment statement has the form:

LET store location name = expression.

This means find the value of the expression of the right-hand side of the '=' and store this value in the store location named on the left-hand side of the '='.

The tricky point about LET ... = ... is that it is easily confused with ... = ... in mathematical equations. An example will demonstrate the difference. Suppose you have stored a number in location L and you want to make the number in that store 5 greater than it now is. You write:

LET L = L+5

Now obviously this doesn't mean:

L = L+5

since there is no value for L which could make this true. What it does mean is that the computer has added 5 to the number that is in store location L.

1.9 Store locations

As we have already said, one of the main characteristics of a computer system is its capacity for storing large quantities of data. We must now consider how the BASIC language allows us to allocate store location names. If you look at our first program and recall that a computer is capable of only doing one thing at a time, it is fairly obvious that when we reach line 20 and wish to input our second number, the number that we entered in line 10 must have been stored somewhere! In this case the first number was stored in the location labelled FIRST. We can think of the storage locations as being like a set of pigeon-holes where we distinguish clearly between the label or address or name on each pigeon-hole and the contents of the hole.

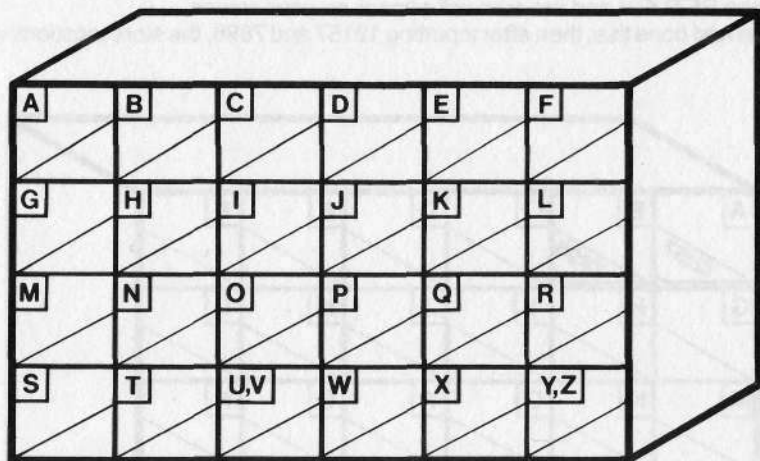


Figure 6 A model of the store locations in a very small computer

You will see that in our model of possible store locations we have used the labels A, B, C... On the other hand, in the program we have been studying we have used words of up to five characters to label our stores, e.g. FIRST, SEC. This brings us to our first major point of difference between the interpreters for the various microcomputers now available. Some BASIC interpreters allow a much wider range of storage names than others. Some machines limit your variable name to a few characters. Others allow longer variable names or even names of unrestricted length. The Commodore 64 computer allows variable names of unlimited length, but variable names may neither be nor include BASIC keywords. We could not use SECOND as a variable name in Program 1 because it includes ON, a BASIC keyword, only the first two characters of a variable name are significant, for example, SUM, SUN and SUB are all treated as the same variable name because they start with the same first two letters SU.

Choosing store location names

Clearly it makes life a lot easier for the programmer if he chooses store location names which remind him of what he is storing. That is why we chose FIRST, SEC and SUM. We could have used A, B and S so that our program would have been:

```

10 INPUT A
20 INPUT B
30 LET S = A+B
40 PRINT S
50 END

```

Program 9

- Ⓚ When you see this symbol it means we suggest you try this program on your own microcomputer if you have one. To do this, key in the lines, press RETURN and then press RUN. Your computer will ask you for a number. Give it one and press RETURN. It then asks you for the second number. Give it the second number, press RETURN and the sum will appear on your screen. If we had done this, then after inputting 12157 and 7896, the store locations would be:

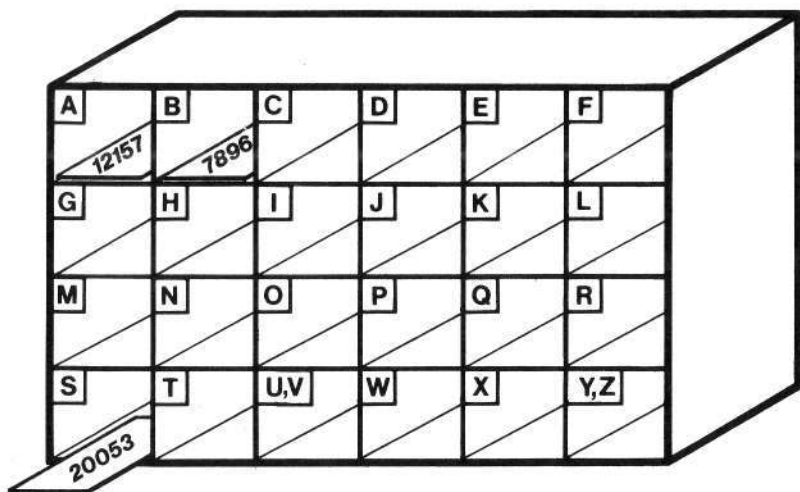


Figure 7 State of the store locations after Program 9.

The common system of location names

Since long store location names are not always available on many microcomputers, we shall use the system of location names which works on practically every microcomputer until we come to lists in a later unit. The system we shall use labels a location by a capital letter followed by a digit. This gives us 286 possible locations as shown in Figure 8.

The Commodore 64 requires the first character of a store location name to be in the range A to Z and the second and subsequent characters in the range A to Z or 0 to 9.

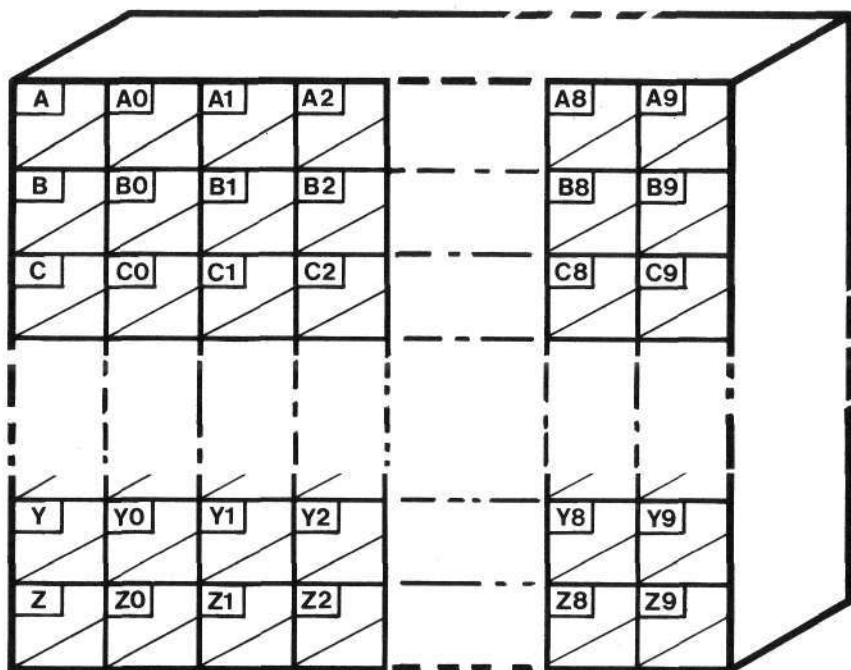


Figure 8 286 possible store locations

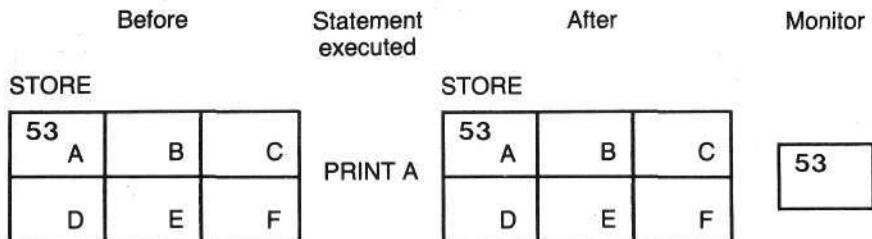
1.10 Copying and overwriting

BASIC statements can have two different effects on the contents of a store location. Or rather a statement can either have no effect on the contents of the location or it can change the contents. This is illustrated below.

Effect of copying

Suppose we have the number 53 stored in location A. What happens after LET B = A and after PRINT A? In each case A still stores the number 53 after the statement has been executed:

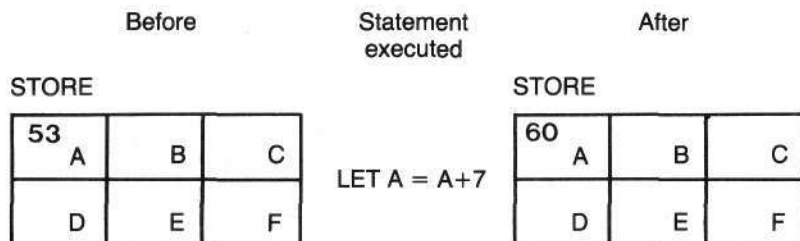
Before	Statement executed	After												
STORE		STORE												
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">53 A</td> <td style="text-align: center;">B</td> <td style="text-align: center;">C</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">D</td> <td style="text-align: center;">E</td> <td style="text-align: center;">F</td> </tr> </table>	53 A	B	C	D	E	F	LET B = A	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">53 A</td> <td style="text-align: center;">53 B</td> <td style="text-align: center;">C</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">D</td> <td style="text-align: center;">E</td> <td style="text-align: center;">F</td> </tr> </table>	53 A	53 B	C	D	E	F
53 A	B	C												
D	E	F												
53 A	53 B	C												
D	E	F												



In each case the copying statements leave the original store location unchanged. It's just like getting a statement of your bank account: the piece of paper copies your account but your account still has your money in it!

Effect of overwriting

Suppose now that we still have the number 53 stored in location A but this time execute the statement $LET A = A+7$. The result is:



The statement $LET A = A+7$ overwrites the contents of A. That is, the original contents disappear and are replaced by the new contents, which are in this case, 60. Of course we could have made the new contents of A to be 60 in many ways, e.g. by, say: $LET A = 60$.

SAQ 4

Which of the following are valid store location names for numbers, according to the rules given on pages 20–21.

- (a) N3
- (b) 3N
- (c) W10
- (d) B#
- (e) QJ
- (f) M
- (g) M5
- (h) M-5
- (i) M+5
- (j) U0

Give reasons for discarding those names which you reject.

1.11 Arithmetic operators

When you do arithmetic you use four main operators: +, -, × and ÷. BASIC has the same operators, although two are printed differently:

Every day symbol	Meaning	BASIC symbol
+	add	+
-	subtract	-
×	multiply	★
÷	divide	/

SAQ 5

Write the following expressions using BASIC symbols for the arithmetic operators. (Where the expressions use brackets, leave the brackets in your answers.)

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) $3+7$ | (e) $30\div(3+2)$ |
| (b) 3×7 | (f) $24-(4\times 3)$ |
| (c) $8\div 4$ | (g) $5\times 6\times 7$ |
| (d) $5\times(2+8)$ | (h) $81-(27\times 2)$ |

SAQ 6

If A has the value of 2, B has the value of 5 and C has the value of 10, calculate the values of the following:

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| (a) $A+B+C$ | (e) $C/(B-A)$ |
| (b) $A\star B$ | (f) $A\star A$ |
| (c) $A\star B\star C$ | (g) $(B\star C)/(B-A)$ |
| (d) C/A | (h) $(C-B)\star(C+B)$ |

The arithmetic is actually done (executed) in BASIC through assignment statements (LET statements) which tell the computer's arithmetic unit (part of the central processor) what to do. We can illustrate this with the following computer model.

Effect of LET $A = B - C$

STORE AT START

A	15	B	10	C
D		E		F

LET $A = B - C$

Remember to read this from the right to the left of the "=" sign. It says take the number in location B, subtract from it the number in location C and put the result in location A. So the result is:

Result of LET $A = B - C$

STORE AT FINISH

Notice that the contents of B and C are unchanged.

5	A	15	B	10	C
	D		E		F

Effect of LET A = B★C

STORE AT START

A	15	B	10	C
D		E		F

STORE AT FINISH

150	A	15	B	10	C
	D		E		F

SAQ 7

Fill in the values in the store locations A, B and C after each line has been executed in these programs.

1. Program

```
10 LET A = 12
20 LET B = 5
30 LET C = A★(A+B)
40 LET A = A+10
```

Store location values

A	B	C
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2. Program

```
10 LET A = 20
20 LET B = A★3
30 LET C = A/4
40 LET A = B+C
```

Store location values

A	B	C
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

What you have just done isn't (we hope) difficult and it doesn't get any more difficult when we move on to more complicated store location names. We have to make the names more complicated because A, B, C . . . only gives us 26 stores and, as we said on page 21, we are going to use location names A, A0, A1, etc. So,

LET P4 = Q1★R1

is no different from LET A = B★C. P4, Q1 and R1 are simply store location names. P4 is one name, just as XYZ 823A is one car number.

We are now ready to use the arithmetic capacity of a computer.

Example 2

Write a BASIC program to enter two numbers into the computer and then output their sum, difference, product and quotient.

Solution

This may look complicated but we've really solved this already. We had a program (*Program 9*) to output the sum of two numbers, so to output their difference, product and quotient, we only need to change the arithmetic operator in line 30 which reads

```
30 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
```

First, however, we will rewrite the program using the shorter store location names:

Original version

```
10 INPUT FIRST
20 INPUT SEC
30 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
40 PRINT SUM
50 END
```

New version

```
10 INPUT N1
20 INPUT N2
30 LET S = N1+N2
40 PRINT S
50 END
```

Program 10

Now what we need is three extra versions of the new version, each with a different line 30:

10 INPUT N1	" "	" "	" "
20 INPUT N2	" "	" "	" "
30 LET S = N1+N2	" D = N1-N2	" P = N1★N2	" Q = N1/N2
40 PRINT S	" D	" P	" Q

(Using D for the location for difference, P for the location for product and Q for the location for quotient.)

Do we need to write four programs? Fortunately no, because when we copy the numbers from locations N1 and N2, we don't destroy these contents so we can use them four times over in one program:

```
10 INPUT N1
20 INPUT N2
30 LET S = N1+N2
40 PRINT S
50 LET D = N1-N2
60 PRINT D
70 LET P = N1★N2
80 PRINT P
90 LET Q = N1/N2
100 PRINT Q
110 END
```

Diagram illustrating the program structure with brackets and labels:

- Lines 10-40: original program for sum
- Lines 50-60: extra lines for difference
- Lines 70-80: extra lines for product
- Lines 90-100: extra lines for quotient

Program 11 Sum, difference, product and quotient of two numbers

K Key Program 11 into your microcomputer. Then key RUN and input two numbers. A typical print out should look like:

```
RUN
? 57.82
? 19.11
  76.93
  38.71
 1104.9402
  3.02564103
READY.
```

1.12 Numerical constants

Earlier in this unit we saw that our first BASIC program was capable of manipulating whole, decimal and negative numbers. At this stage we won't go into detail on how numbers are represented in BASIC, but just show you that we can use numbers directly in assignment statements.

The statement $LET P = 427 * R$ means create the number 427, multiply it by the number found in store location R and then store the result in location P. (Don't be put off by thinking that computers only handle binary numbers. The computer's interpreter enables us to input ordinary decimal numbers.)

Similarly, the statement $LET Y4 = 3.142 + Z8$ creates the number 3.142 and adds it to the contents of location Z8, and then stores the sum in location Y4.

And the statement $LET A = -48.93 / B$ creates the number -48.93 and divides it by the number found in location B and then stores the result of this calculation in location A.

Exercise preamble

Progress in metrication has been slow and life still abounds with irritating little conversions which occasionally tease us, e.g. pounds weight to kilogram yards to metres, pints to litres, a knitting pattern with balls of wool in ounces which must be bought in grams etc. . . . If we go on holiday we mentally convert kilometres into miles, and pounds sterling into other currency. Most of us still think of body and weather temperatures in terms of degrees Fahrenheit rather than Centigrade or Celsius. We can imagine the home microcomputer of the future having a general conversion program in it which will do all these diverse conversions for us. The next two exercises are on writing programs to do conversions. You only need the ideas introduced in the earlier programs in this Unit.

Exercise 1

Write programs in BASIC to carry out each of the following conversions:

- Input a number representing a length in inches, and output this length in centimetres, given that one inch is equivalent to 2.54 centimetres.
- Input a number representing a weight in ounces, and output that weight in grams given that one ounce is equivalent to 28.375 grams.

(Answers to Exercises appear at the end of each unit with the SAQ answers.)

Exercise 2

Any conversion involves 'conversion factor \times number to be converted' so it is possible to write a general conversion program where you input two numbers each time you use it: the conversion factor and the number to be converted. Write a general conversion program which will do this.

1.13 The remark statement: REM

The statement REM is the remark statement. It allows us to give a title to a program or make some other meaningful remark about the program. For example, within the body of a program it helps us identify what the program or section of the program does. The REM statement is not executed by the computer and is there purely for the benefit of either the programmer or user, i.e. when the computer sees REM at the beginning of a line it ignores everything on that line. The next program is concerned with calculating percentages and so as a title to the program our first statement will be 10 REM **★★PERCENTAGE CALCULATION★★**. (The **★★** have no function other than to emphasise the title.)

Example 3

Write a BASIC program to input two numbers and output the second as a percentage of the first.

Reminder Percentage = (second \div first) \times 100.

Solution

```
10 REM★★PERCENTAGE CALCULATION★★ (program title using  
    REM statement)  
20 INPUT F  
30 INPUT S  
40 LET P = (S/F)★100  
50 PRINT P  
60 END
```

Program 12 Percentage calculation

Typical runs

```
RUN  
? 57  
? 74  
 129.824561
```

```
READY.  
RUN  
? 74  
? 57  
 77.0270271
```

READY.

K Program 12.

It is usually better to clear the screen of any unwanted information when running a program. We can do this with a line such as

```
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
```

Character 147 in the set of characters stored in the computer's memory means 'clear the screen'. See end of Unit 3 for more details of the character set. Where appropriate we shall use this instruction at the start of all programs.

1.14 More complicated arithmetic

We have reached the stage when we can use the computer like a simple four-function calculating machine, but we will soon wish to do slightly more complicated arithmetic. Generally BASIC allows us to set out equations in a familiar way. We can use brackets, i.e. () to group together certain values, and when BASIC evaluates an expression it deals with the values *inside* the brackets first. Next come values involving multiplication or division and finally, addition and subtraction.

This order of preference for performing arithmetic operations is discussed more fully in a later unit, but you will soon see that this order just formalises the way we naturally go about arithmetic calculations.

Let's show you what we mean.

Example 4

Write the following expressions in BASIC:

1. $ab+c$ 2. $a(b+c)$ 3. $\frac{a}{b+c}$

Solutions

1. $A \star B + C$

The order of precedence rules tell us that $A \star B$ will be evaluated first and the C added. If you were worried about this you could write $(A \star B) + C$ but the brackets aren't essential here.

2. $A \star (B + C)$

Notice that, just as a bracket is needed in $a(b+c)$ so it is needed in $A \star (B + C)$.

3. $A / (B + C)$

Now try some for yourself.

SAQ 8

Write the following as BASIC expressions:

1. abc
2. $\frac{ab}{c}$
3. $\frac{a+b}{c}$

Exercise 3

Now that you have written the expressions in SAQ 8 as BASIC expressions, write a program that will allow you to input three numbers (A, B and C) and print out the values of the expressions in SAQ 8.

1.15 Literal printing

You have seen already that we can print out the values from store locations. You will find as the course progresses that the PRINT function is very versatile. One use of this statement is to print messages on the monitor screen which will be helpful to the user when the program is running. These messages are usually referred to as prompts. We have seen already that when an input statement is encountered during the execution of a program, a ? appears on the screen to remind us that an input is required. In even slightly complicated programs, a series

of question marks on the screen is confusing to the user since he may not know which input value the question mark is prompting. Prompts generated by PRINT statements are very useful in these circumstances.

It is very easy to get a computer to print a reminder or message on the screen. All you need is a line such as:

```
20 PRINT "MESSAGE"
```

This simply prints

```
MESSAGE
```

on your screen.

In other words, whatever appears between quotes thus " " after the word PRINT will be printed out exactly as it stands. Notice that, as in the case of the REM statement, the computer doesn't execute the words in the quotes. Thus

```
20 PRINT "A+B"
```

results in

```
A+B
```

on your screen and the computer does not add the value in location A to the value in location B.

The following example demonstrates the use of PRINT " " to remind the programmer and user of what the program is doing.

Example 5

Write a BASIC program to convert a temperature value given in degrees C into degrees F.

Remember $^{\circ}\text{F} = \frac{9}{5} \times ^{\circ}\text{C} + 32$

Solution

```
10 REM **CENTIGRADE TO FAHRENHEIT**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
17 PRINT "CONVERTING TEMPERATURES"
20 PRINT "ENTER NEXT TEMP IN DEGREES C"
30 INPUT C
40 LET F=(9/5)*C+32
50 PRINT "THIS TEMP IN DEGREES F IS"
60 PRINT F
70 END
```

print message precedes
input statement
so that the
message is printed
before ? appears

Program 13 Temperature conversion

Typical run

```
RUN
CONVERTING TEMPERATURES
ENTER NEXT TEMP IN DEGREES C
? 16
THIS TEMP IN DEGREES F IS
 60.8
READY.
```

K Program 13.

We can use PRINT " " to give an on-screen title to the program (as in line 17, here).

Assignment 1

NEC students: your solution to this assignment should be sent to your NEC tutor for marking. If you own your own microcomputer, write your own assignment in the BASIC for that computer and tell your tutor what make of microcomputer it is.

FlexiStudy students: complete the assignments according to the instructions given to you by your FlexiStudy centre.

Remember to make good use of remark and literal print statements when writing your programs.

1. If you deposit £D in an account paying P% rate of interest for one year, then the yield at the end of the first year is given by the equation

$$Y = D \times \frac{P}{100}$$

(a) Write a BASIC program to input values for D and P and to output the yield, Y.

(b) If the original deposit together with the accrued interest is left in the account for a further year at the same rate of interest then the compound interest after the second year will be given by the equation

$$C = (D+Y) \times \frac{P}{100}$$

Extend your program for (a) to calculate and output this compound interest.

2. Consider the problem of estimating the cost of installing replacement aluminium double glazed windows. The windows comprise 3 parts:

(a) a hardwood surround, (b) aluminium frame and (c) glass. If the height of the window is H metres and the width is W metres, then the total lengths of both hardwood and aluminium required are given approximately by the expression $(2H+2W)$ metres; and the area of glass required by the expression $(H \times W)$ square metres.

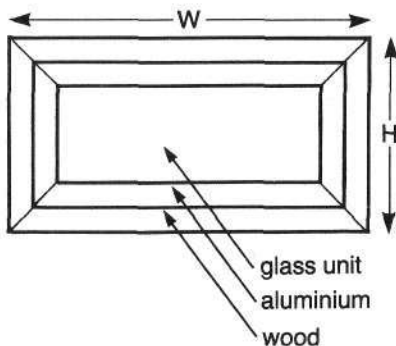


Figure 9

Write three separate BASIC programs which, on being given values for height and width in metres, will output the cost of

- the hardwood surround if the wood costs £3 per metre;
- the aluminium surround if the aluminium costs £4 per metre;
- the glass unit if the glass unit costs £40 per square metre.

Now link these three into one program to estimate and output the total cost of installation, if the labour cost is £50 per window.

Objectives of Unit 1

Now that you have completed this Unit, check that you are able to:

Write simple programs using:

Line numbers

INPUT

LET

PRINT

Store locations identified by a single letter or a letter followed by a single digit

Copying from one location to another

Overwriting

$+$, $-$, \star , $/$

()

Numerical constants

REM

PRINT " "

Know when to use:

RET

RUN

Know how to respond to:

READY.

?

Answers to SAQ's and Exercises

SAQ 1

A	B
1	(c)
2	(e)
3	(g)
4	(a)
5	(b)
6	(f)
7	(d)

SAQ 2

(a) and (e) would run as Program 1.

(b) is asked to print SUM before SUM has been calculated.

(c) and (d) are asked to calculate SUM before SECOND has been inputted.

SAQ 3

```
                (K)
10 INPUT FIRST
20 INPUT SEC
30 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
40 PRINT SUM
C—50 END
C—RUN
R—? —37————— D ] entry
```

```

R— ? -46—————D
      -83—————R } execution

R— READY
C— LIST
      (K)
      10 INPUT FIRST
      20 INPUT SEC
      30 LET SUM = FIRST+SEC
      40 PRINT SUM
K— 50 END } listing

R— READY
C— RUN
R— ? 12.83—————D
R— ? 48.95—————D } execution
      61.78—————R

R— READY
C— RUN
R— ? 17.0009—————D
R— ? -29.2629—————D } execution
      -12.362—————R

R— READY

```

(Have you noticed that this program has coped with negative and decimal fractional numbers?)

SAQ 4

- (a) OK
 (b) No, begins with a digit instead of a letter
 (c) Not allowed on all systems. (10 is two digits, not 1 as in, say, W8.) OK on CBM 64.
 (d) NO, # is not an acceptable symbol in a variable name.
 (e) No, uses two letters. (This will, of course, work on some machines.) OK on CBM 64.
 (f) OK
 (g) OK
 (h) No, '-' is not an acceptable symbol.
 (i) No, '+' is not an acceptable symbol.
 (j) OK

SAQ 5

- (a) $3+7$ (b) $3 \star 7$ (c) $8/4$ (d) $5 \star (2+8)$ (e) $30/(3+2)$
 (f) $24-(4 \star 3)$ (g) $5 \star 6 \star 7$ (h) $81-(27 \star 2)$

SAQ 6

- (a) 17 (b) 10 (c) 100 (d) 5 (e) $10/3$ or $3\frac{1}{3}$ or $3.33 \dots$
 (f) 4 (g) $50/3$ or $16\frac{2}{3}$ or $16.66 \dots$ (h) 75

SAQ 7

1.

12		
12	5	

2.

20		
20	60	

12 5 204

22 5 204

20 60 5

65 60 5

Exercise 1

(a) Program 14

```
10 INPUT L1
20 LET L2 = 2.54★L1
30 PRINT L2
40 END
```

Typical runs

```
RUN
? 12 ]————— first use
30.48 ]
```

```
READY
RUN
? 36 ]————— second use
91.44 ]
```

READY

Program 14.

(b) Program 15

```
10 INPUT W1
20 LET W2 = W1★28.375
30 PRINT W2
40 END
```

Typical runs

```
RUN
? 10 ]————— first use
283.75 ]
```

```
READY
RUN
? 50 ]————— second use
1418.75 ]
```

```
READY
RUN
? 16 ]————— third use
454 ]
```

READY

Program 15

Exercise 2

```
Program 16
10 INPUT V
20 INPUT F
30 LET N = F★V
40 PRINT N
50 END
```

Typical runs

```
RUN
? 16 ]————— use for ounces
? 28.375 ]————— to grams
454 ]
```

```
READY
RUN
? 36 ]————— use for inches
?2.54 ]————— to cms.
91.44 ]
```

READY

Program 16

SAQ 8

1. $A \star B \star C$
2. $A \star B / C$ [($A \star B$)/ C is also correct]
3. $(A+B)/C$

```

4  REM ***ARITHMETIC PROGRAM**
6  PRINT CHR$(147)
8  PRINT "THREE NUMBER ARITHMETIC"
10 INPUT A
20 INPUT B
30 INPUT C
40 LET R=A★B★C      ]———— calculates first expression and prints it out
50 PRINT R          ]
60 LET R=(A★B)/C    ]———— calculates second expression and prints it out
70 PRINT R          ]
80 LET R=(A+B)/C    ]———— calculates third expression and prints it out
90 PRINT R          ]
100 END

```

Notice that we can use R as the location for all three answers because we copy (print out) each answer in turn before we overwrite with the next answer.

Typical runs

```

RUN
THREE NUMBER ARITHMETIC
? 13
? -27
? 55.2
-19375.2
-6.35869565
-0.253623188
READY.

```

```

RUN
THREE NUMBER ARITHMETIC
? 13
? 13
? 13
2197
13
2
READY.

```

Program 17

UNIT 2

Making decisions

2.1	Introduction	36
2.2	PRINT . . . ,	36
2.3	Repetitions and GOTO	38
2.4	Programming style	40
2.5	IF . . . THEN . . .	41
2.6	Inequalities	42
2.7	Flowcharts	45
2.8	Counting	48
2.9	Comparisons	53
	Assignment 2	54
	Objectives of Unit 2	54
	Answers to SAQ's and Exercises	55

2.1 Introduction

The programs which we considered in Unit 1 were quite straightforward. They started their processing at the statement with the lowest number and continued in line number order until execution finished at the line with the highest line number. One thing that computers are very good at is lots of repetitive calculations; another is their ability to make decisions. Both of these features involve changing the sequence in which a program is executed. This Unit will introduce you to some of the statements which enable you to write programs of this type. But first we are going to introduce you to a new type of PRINT statement.

2.2 PRINT . . . ,

In Unit 1 we wrote a program (Example 3) to output one number as a percentage of another. On the screen, the calculation and result appeared in the format:

```
RUN
? 57
? 74
 129.824561
```

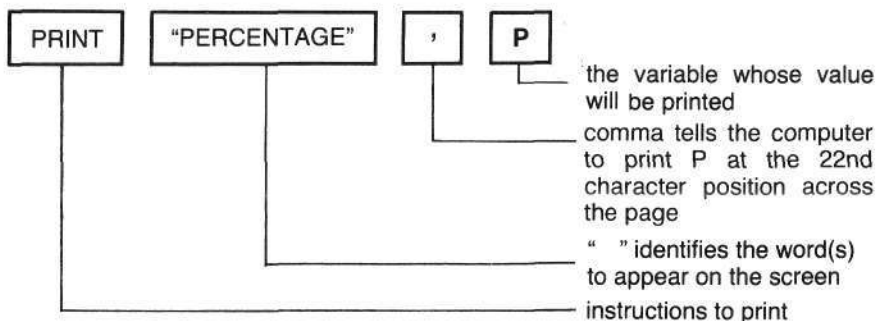
Obviously it would be better if the answer included the word Percentage so that it was clearer what was happening. This can easily be done by changing line 50 from 50 PRINT P to

```
50 PRINT "PERCENTAGE", P
```

The effect of this is:

Version of line 50	Result on screen
50 PRINT P	129.824561
50 PRINT "PERCENTAGE", P	PERCENTAGE 129.824561

The statement PRINT "PERCENTAGE", P has four items in it.



The computer prints the value of P so that the final (right most) digit is at Column 19, and the number 'spreads' as many columns as are needed, to the left.

We can use PRINT . . . , to improve the percentage program from Unit 1. At the same time we can improve the appearance of the program by making use of the literal print statement PRINT " " which we introduced in section 1.15.

Original program

```
10 REM**PERCENTAGE CALCULATION**
20 INPUT F
30 INPUT S
40 LET P = (S/F)*100
50 PRINT P
60 END
```

New program

```
10 REM **PERCENTAGE CALCULATION**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT "CALCULATE PERCENTAGES"
30 PRINT "INPUT THE FIRST NUMBER"
40 INPUT F
50 PRINT "INPUT THE SECOND NUMBER"
60 INPUT S
70 LET P=(S/F)*100
80 PRINT "PERCENTAGE",P
90 END
```

Program 1 Improved percentage program

Original program: typical run

```
RUN
? 80
? 37
  46.25
```

New program: typical run

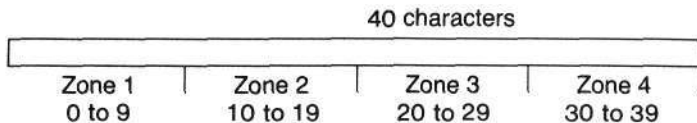
```
RUN
CALCULATE PERCENTAGES
INPUT THE FIRST NUMBER  —— effect of line 20
? 80
INPUT THE SECOND NUMBER —— effect of line 40
? 37
PERCENTAGE              46.25 —— effect of line 70
READY.                  |
                        |—— 22nd position
                        |—— 21st position reserved for '-' sign with numbers
```

Notice how the use of literal print at lines 20 and 40, together with PRINT " ", makes the program much more friendly and understandable when in use.

Program 1.

Commas in PRINT statements

You can use more commas in print statements to space out your results on the screen. Commodore 64 BASIC has four print zones across the screen.



Each successive comma in the print line moves the item after it one zone to the right. Thus

```
PRINT "ZONE 1", "ZONE 2", "ZONE 3"
```

results in

```
ZONE 1      ZONE 2      ZONE 3
```

and

```
PRINT "PERCENTAGE", P gave PERCENTAGE              46.25
```

whereas

```
PRINT "PERCENTAGE"; P would give PERCENTAGE 46.25
```

SAQ 1

What would appear on the screen as a result of these print lines?

(Assume A=48, B=8, C=6 in these questions.)

- (a) PRINT "AREA"; A
- (b) PRINT "LENGTH"; B, "WIDTH"; C, "AREA"; A
- (c) PRINT "LENGTH", "WIDTH", "AREA"
PRINT B, C, A

Write PRINT lines in BASIC which would print on the screen the following words in the zones shown:

	Zone 1	Zone 2	Zone 3	Zone 4
(d)	LENGTH	8	WIDTH	6
(e)	LENGTH	8		
	WIDTH	6		
	AREA	48		
(f)	LENGTH	WIDTH		AREA

2.3 Repetitions and GOTO

Suppose now that you wanted to use Program 1 to calculate all the percentages for a test taken by a whole class of pupils. You would have to use the program over and over again, starting at RUN each time, e.g.:

```
READY  
RUN  
INPUT THE FIRST NUMBER  
? 80  
INPUT THE SECOND NUMBER
```



```

? 42
PERCENTAGE      52.5

READY.
RUN
INPUT THE FIRST NUMBER
? 80
INPUT THE SECOND NUMBER
? 19
PERCENTAGE      23.75

READY.

```

Figure 1 Repeated use of percentage program

It would be much easier if, after the computer has calculated the first percentage, it went back to the beginning of its calculation and asked us for the next mark. This we can make it do using the statement

GOTO line number

which redirects the program to whichever line number we insert. Here is the percentage program re-written in this way:

```

10 REM **MARKS INTO PERCENTAGE**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT "PERCENTAGE PROGRAM"
30 PRINT "INPUT THE TOTAL POSSIBLE MARKS"
40 INPUT T
45 REM **START OF INPUT
50 PRINT "INPUT THE NEXT MARK"
60 INPUT M
70 LET P=(M/T)*100
80 PRINT "PERCENTAGE",P
90 GOTO 45

```

Program 2 Percentage program for repeated use

Notice the new lines 30 and 40 which ensure that we only have to enter the maximum mark on the test once. The calculation is carried out in lines 60 to 80 and, in reading line 90, the program returns to line 45 to ask us for another mark. A typical run is:

```

RUN
PERCENTAGE PROGRAM
INPUT THE TOTAL POSSIBLE MARKS
? 80
INPUT THE NEXT MARK
? 42
PERCENTAGE      52.5
INPUT THE NEXT MARK
? 67
PERCENTAGE      83.75
INPUT THE NEXT MARK
? 19
PERCENTAGE      23.75

```

```
INPUT THE NEXT MARK
PERCENTAGE      23.75
? 55
PERCENTAGE      68.75
INPUT THE NEXT MARK
?
```

The GOTO statement interrupts the program's normal execution in line number order. As soon as the program reads GOTO, it unconditionally transfers control to the line number in the statement. It is sometimes called an 'unconditional jump'.

Program 2. (Press RUN STOP and RESTORE when you are fed up with it!)

SAQ 2

The following program squares numbers (i.e. multiplies a number by itself). Add a GOTO line to allow you to use the program over and over again to square successive numbers.

```
10 INPUT N
20 LET S = N*N
30 PRINT S
40 END
```

Program 3 Calculating squares

key and run lines 5 to 40.

Add your extra line and run your new program.

2.4 Programming style

The use of the GOTO statement helped in some ways. However, it still left some loose ends, such as the ? at the end of the run. On reaching line 90 in Program 2 control is always returned to line 45 which then generates the demand for further input; hence the ?. The program then is locked in a perpetual loop from which it cannot escape. The only way to stop this program is to break out of it which is accomplished by pressing RUN STOP and RESTORE.

To have the execution of the program left as it were in mid-air is obviously bad style, but we will sort this out in a little while. More importantly, we ought to warn you of the dangers of using GOTO. As we have said, this statement allows you to jump or branch to virtually any position in the program, which may at this stage seem to be a useful facility. But because GOTO allows us to jump rather at random to any point in the program, it is often used in such a way that the logical structure of the solution is broken up by 'jumps of convenience' to other parts of the program rather than by following the logical structure of the analysis of the problem. We will, therefore, use the GOTO statement sparingly throughout this course. We shall only use it when we think that the clarity of the program will be marred if it is not used. We hope that you will also try and follow our example and use the GOTO statement as little as possible. Though we will avoid its indiscriminate use, you will find it more widely used in some text-books and computer magazines.

You will notice that we will nearly always make the GOTO statement refer back to a REM line. This will allow us to put an explanation of the jump in the REM statement, to make the jump in program logic more easy to understand when looking at the program listing. Even more importantly, this will make amendments to program listings simple; we will be able to add or remove lines, often without changing the details of the GOTO statement.

2.5 IF ... THEN ...

The problem that we have just left is how to signal to the computer that we have reached the end of the list of marks. When doing a manual calculation, we can see that we have reached the end, or, if not, we would have carried out some sort of counting procedure. In a little while we will see how the computer may be used to count for us, but first we will introduce a means of signalling that the end of the list has been reached.

One method is to end the list of numbers that you put in with a special number that will 'stick out like a sore thumb', eg -9999. We would hardly expect a pupil to have obtained -9999 marks in any test! This value is called a dummy or terminating value, or sometimes a rogue value. We want the program to run as normal when 'proper' marks are inputted but to stop when the mark -9999 is inputted. In other words, we want to be able to write a program with the following logical structure:

1. Start.
2. Input the total marks.
3. Input the next mark.
4. If this value is equal to -9999 then go to line 8 otherwise carry on to line 5.
5. Calculate the percentage.
6. Output the percentage.
7. Go to line 3.
8. Stop.

Figure 2 Stopping the percentage calculation

Fortunately there is a BASIC statement which will carry out the decision in line 4. It is:

IF THEN line number

└ condition to be satisfied for program to jump to given line number

So all we need to do is to translate statement 4 in Figure 2 as

```
65 IF M = -9999 THEN 100
```

and insert it into Program 4. This statement means: if the value found in M is equal to -9999, then go to line 100, otherwise continue executing the next statement after 65. The statement in Figure 2 'otherwise carry on to line 5' is not translated into BASIC but is implied: either jump out of sequence or carry on in sequence. We can do this very conveniently by using some new line numbers between the ones we have been using. (You will remember that we deliberately spread out statements 10, 20, 30 . . . so as to leave room to put extra statements in later.) This gives us:

```
10 REM **PERCENTAGES**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT "PERCENTAGE PROGRAM"
30 PRINT "INPUT THE TOTAL MARKS"
40 INPUT T
45 REM **START OF INPUT**
50 PRINT "INPUT THE NEXT MARK"
60 INPUT M
76 IF M = -9999 THEN 100
70 LET P=(M/T)*100
```

```
80 PRINT "PERCENTAGE",P
90 GOTO 45
100 END
```

Program 4 Percentage calculation with a terminating value

You use Program 4 in exactly the same way as Program 2 until you have put in the last mark to be converted to a percentage. Then you enter the mark -9999 and the program ends.

Here is a typical run.

```
RUN
PERCENTAGE PROGRAM
INPUT THE TOTAL NUMBER OF MARKS
? 80
INPUT THE NEXT MARK
? 43
PERCENTAGE      53.75
INPUT THE NEXT MARK
? 29
PERCENTAGE      36.25
INPUT THE NEXT MARK
? 62
PERCENTAGE      77.5
INPUT NEXT MARK
? -9999 _____ terminating mark

READY.
```

Program 4 and use it to convert some marks of your own. Terminate your run with -9999.

SAQ 3

You ended SAQ 2 with the program:

```
5  REM **CALCULATING SQUARES**
10 INPUT N
20 LET S = N*N
30 PRINT S
35 GOTO 5
40 END
```

but like the percentage program, this never stops. Modify the program to include a dummy value for terminating the program.

2.6 Inequalities

It was helpful to be able to use the expression $M = -9999$ in the IF ... THEN ... statement to determine whether or not the branch should occur. The statement means if $M = -9999$ is true then branch, otherwise carry on. The = states a relationship between M and -9999.

BASIC allows expressions to include relationships:

Relationship	Example	Meaning
>	$A > B$	the value in store location A is greater than the value in B
<	$X < Y$	the value in store location X is less than the value in Y

True or false?

Consider the expression $A < B$. If $A = 2$ and $B = 5$ then $A < B$ is true, because 2 is less than 5. Consider the same expression with values $A = 2$ and $B = 1$. Now $A < B$ is false, because 2 is not less than 1. Similarly if $A = 2$ and $B = 2$ then $A < B$ is false, for 2 is not less than 2. In writing programs we often find it useful to be able to know whether a statement involving = or < or > will be true or false. This is called the logical state of the assertion, e.g.

Assertion	Logical state
$3 > 2$	True
$7 < 7$	False

You will probably find this easy enough for positive whole numbers but may be less sure of what happens in other cases. If in doubt, remember the number line:

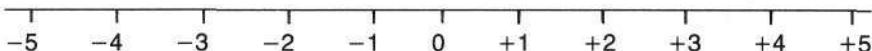


Figure 3 The number line

If a number is found on this line to be to the left of a second number, then the first is less than the second number; if to the right then the first is greater than the second.

Example 1

Test whether the following expressions are true or false for the given values of A and B.

Values		Expression
A	B	
2	5	$A > B$
2	-5	$A > B$
-2	-5	$A > B$
-2	-1	$A > B$
-5	2	$A < B$
5	-2	$A < B$
-3	3	$A = B$

Solution

To do this we work out the value of each expression using the values given and then use the number line to decide whether or not the assertion is true or false for those particular values. So the solution is:

Values		Assertion		
A	B	Expression	Its value	Its logical state
2	5	$A > B$	$2 > 5$	F
2	-5	$A > B$	$2 > -5$	T
-2	-5	$A > B$	$-2 > -5$	T
-2	-1	$A > B$	$-2 > -1$	F
-5	2	$A < B$	$-5 < 2$	T
5	-2	$A < B$	$5 < -2$	F
-3	3	$A = B$	$-3 = 3$	F

F = false

T = true

SAQ 4

Complete the following table to determine whether the given expressions are true or false for the values given.

Values		Assertion		
A	B	Expression	Its value	Its logical state
3	7	$A > B$		
5	3	$A > B$		
-3	5	$A > B$		
8	5	$A < B$		
3	9	$A < B$		
8	-2	$A < B$		

We are now in a position to use relationships to allow control of a program to jump to a new line when certain conditions are satisfied.

Example 2

In the following program segment after executing line 30, will control pass to line 40 or line 100?

```

10 LET A = -3
20 LET B = 2
30 IF A+B>0 THEN 100
40
```

Program 5

Solution

$-3+2 > 0$ is false, so the branch to 100 will not occur and control will just pass on to line 40.

SAQ 5

In the following program segments after executing line 30, will control pass to line 40 or to line 100?

- (a) 10 LET A = 7
20 LET B = -8
30 IF A-B<0 THEN 100
40
- (b) 10 LET X = 3
20 LET Y = -3
30 IF X/Y = -1 THEN 100
40
- (c) 10 LET P = -1
20 LET Q = 3
30 IF P+Q>Q THEN 100
40
- (d) 10 LET M = 3
15 LET N = -4
20 LET P = -2
30 IF M-N<N-P THEN 100
40
- (e) 10 LET R = 1
20 LET S = -2
30 IF R+S>-1 THEN 100
40

Programs 6-10

2.7 FLOWCHARTS

As we have said the principal task for a programmer is to find a suitable way of expressing the solution strategy to solve a particular problem. At this stage we must introduce you to what must be the ugliest word in computer jargon: algorithm. This word is used to mean a general solution strategy, and is defined as a series of instructions or procedural steps for the solution of a specific problem. You will notice that in this case the computer is not mentioned. Apart from that, the definition of program and algorithm are identical. A program then is an algorithm written for a computer.

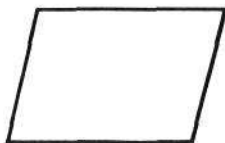
There are three basic ways of stating an algorithm:

- (i) a description
- (ii) BASIC coding
- (iii) a flowchart

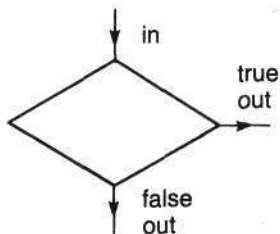
Flowcharts are a bit like blueprints and appeal to those of us who like to see events displayed in pictorial, chart or cartoon form.

We display the different functions within an algorithm by using different shaped boxes.

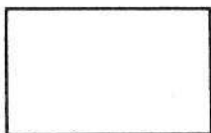
INPUT
AND
OUTPUT
FUNCTIONS



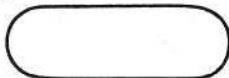
DECISIONS



ASSIGNMENTS



START/STOP



An \rightarrow shows the sequence of the algorithm, and the boxes contain appropriate scripts.

The first program from Unit 1 can be expressed in flowchart form as follows:

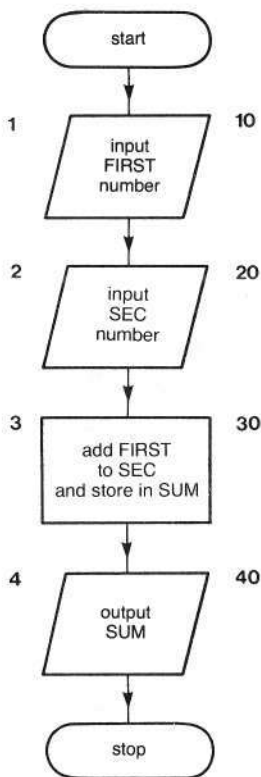


Figure 4 Flowchart of Program 1 from Unit 1

The descriptions of the functions in the boxes are in cryptic-English but could be followed by someone who has no knowledge of BASIC. In that respect we say that we try to keep these descriptions language independent. The numbers on the left-hand side of the boxes refer to the statements in the descriptive algorithm in Figure 4 of Unit 1, and the numbers on the right-hand side of the boxes refer to the statements in the BASIC program in Program 1 of Unit 1.

SAQ 6

Construct a flowchart for the percentage program (Program 1).

The decision box

You have seen how decisions are effected in BASIC using the IF ... THEN ... statement. The logic is:

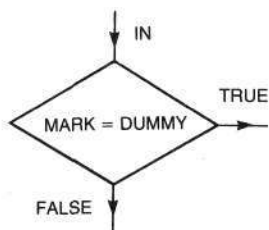
IF assertion is true THEN go to line X

otherwise (assertion is false) carry on to the next line

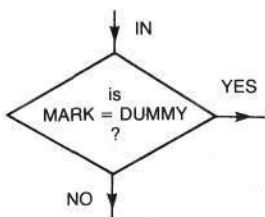
The basic idea of branching to line X or carrying on to the next is depicted in the flowchart by two lines from a decision box. The decision of line 65 of Program 4:

```
65 IF M = -9999 THEN 100
```

could be depicted in language independent form



The assertion MARK = DUMMY may be expressed as a question



Flowchart style is up to you. The test of the effectiveness of a flowchart is whether or not you can follow the flowchart easily some time after its composition! Or, if you are trying to communicate your ideas to somebody else, whether they can follow your flowchart easily.

A flowchart for Program 4 is given below.

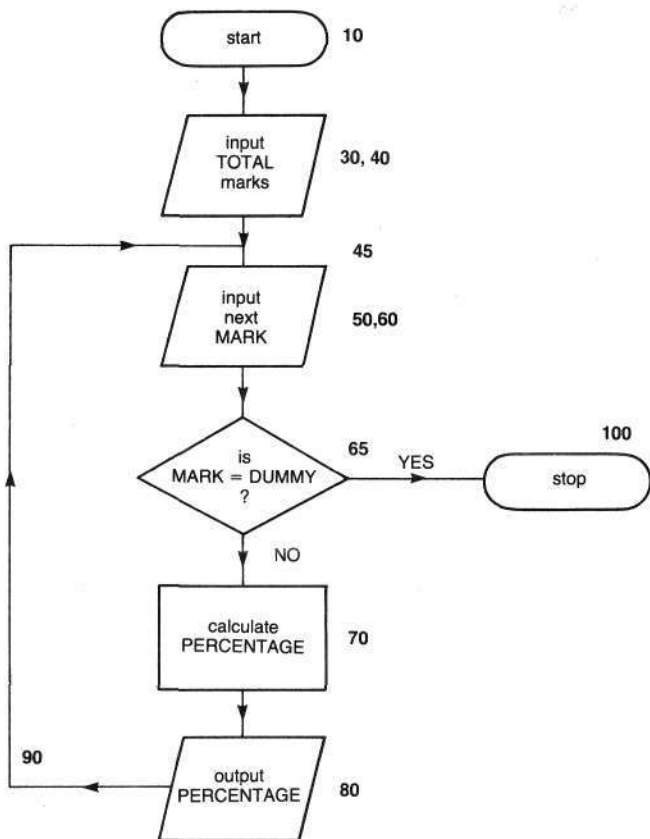


Figure 5 Flowchart for percentage program

The numbers on the right-hand side of the flowchart boxes refer to the statement numbers in the program. Statement 90 GOTO 45 is represented by a loop back to box 30.

SAQ 7

Write a flowchart for the program you wrote in answer to SAQ 3.

Now that we have introduced the idea of flowcharts, we can use them to help plan the structures of the programs that we are going to write.

2.8 Counting

As we have said, computers are good at carrying out lots of repetitive procedures. If however we wish to control these activities rather than just start and stop them,

as we did in the last example, then we must use the computer to count the repetitions for us. If we carry out a specified number of repetitions of an activity, we start counting at the first activity, add one for each subsequent activity, until we reach a predetermined limit. We can depict this procedure in flowchart form.

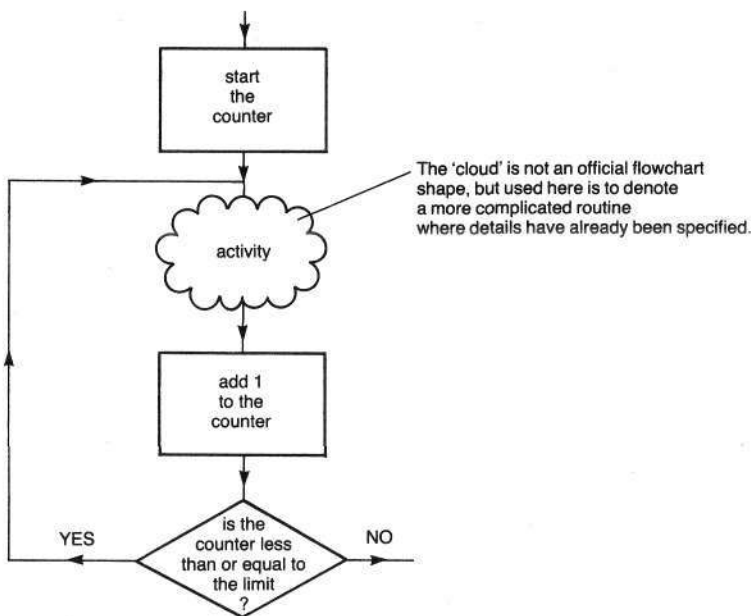


Figure 6 A counter in a flowchart

Notice that there are three parts to the counter:

- (i) the procedure that sets the counter to its initial value;
- (ii) the procedure for adding 1 to the counter each time the activity is completed;
- (iii) the procedure for stopping the counter and leaving the activity when it has been executed the required number of times.

Great care must be taken to ensure that we exit from such a repetitive loop at exactly the point we wish to. As a warning, note that though this loop has counted up to 10, the value of the location COUNT on leaving the loop will be 11. This is a point which you would have to be very careful about if you wished to use the number in COUNT later on in the program.

SAQ 8

How many numbers will be inputted with the flowcharts?

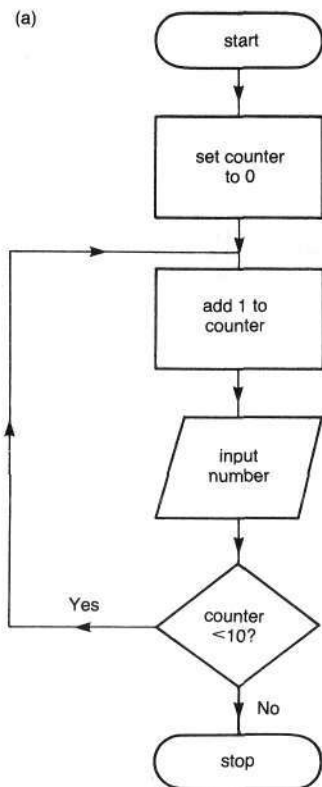


Figure 7a

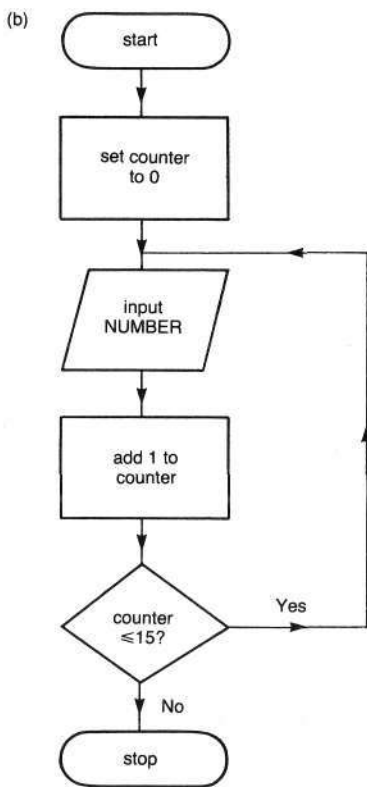


Figure 7b

SAQ 9

Make the following program read 5 numbers by completing the IF ... THEN ... statement.

```

7 PRINT CHR$(147)
10 LET C=0
15 REM ***READ NEXT NUMBER**
20 INPUT N
30 OF C=4 THEN 55
40 LET C=C+1
50 GOTO 15
55 REM ***ALL DONE**
60 END
  
```

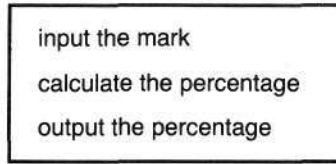
Program 11

Example 3

Write a BASIC program to calculate and output the percentage marks for a group of 5 pupils.

Solution

If we assume that the 'activity' in the cloud in the flowchart of Figure 6 was



then we can display the algorithm for this solution in flowchart form.

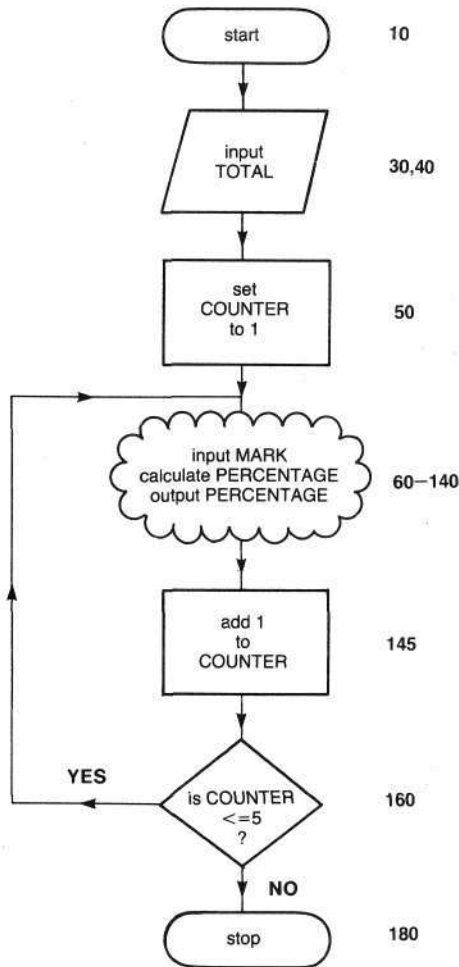


Figure 8 Flowchart for percentage calculation on 5 marks

This tells us the structure of the program that we need to write. The actual program can now be written by modifying Program 4 to incorporate the counter. So the required program is:

```

10 REM **PERCENTAGES**
20 REM **TOTAL MARKS**
25 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 PRINT "INPUT THE TOTAL MARKS"
40 INPUT T
50 LET C=1
60 REM **START OF 'NEXT WEEK' LOOP**
70 PRINT "INPUT NEXT MARK"
80 INPUT M
120 REM **CALCULATION**
130 LET P=(M/T)*100
140 PRINT "PERCENTAGE",P
145 LET C=C+1
150 PRINT "LINE 150"
152 PRINT "COUNT HERE =",C
160 IF C<=5 THEN 60
170 REM **ALL DONE**
180 END

```

start the counter, 'initialisation'

add 1 to the counter, 'incrementation'

we've added this line to check what is happening to the counter at this point in the program.

counting complete?

Program 12 Adding a counter to the percentage program

```

RUN
INPUT THE TOTAL MARKS
? 75
INPUT THE NEXT MARK
? 57
PERCENTAGE      76
LINE 75      COUNT HERE =  2
INPUT THE NEXT MARK
? 62
PERCENTAGE      82.6666667
LINE 75      COUNT HERE =  3
INPUT THE NEXT MARK
? 43
PERCENTAGE      57.3333333
LINE 75      COUNT HERE =  4
INPUT THE NEXT MARK
?39
PERCENTAGE      52
LINE 75      COUNT HERE =  5
INPUT THE NEXT MARK
? 70
PERCENTAGE      93.3333333
LINE 75      COUNT HERE =  6
READY.
>

```

Note: on emergence from the loop the value of the counter is 6.

Program 12.

Exercise 1

In question 2 of Assignment 1, you wrote a program to calculate the cost of double glazing a window. If you wanted to use the program to calculate the costs of several windows, you would have to run the program again and again. This exercise asks you to modify the program to cover more than one window.

Notice that the 'activity' for repetition will be:

input height and width of window
calculate cost of installation of this window
output the cost

- Draw a flowchart algorithm to calculate and output the cost of each of six windows.
- Code the algorithm in BASIC. your answer and try a run for six windows on your microcomputer.
- Extend your program to cope with any chosen number of windows, to be specified at the beginning of the program.

Exercise 2

Extend the problem posed in question 1(b) of Assignment 1. The 'activity' for repetition will be:

calculate the yield
output the year and its yield
calculate the deposit for the next year

- Draw a flowchart algorithm to calculate and output the yield for each year up to six years. Check your answer.
- Code this algorithm in BASIC in full detail. Check your answer. .
- Extend the algorithm to calculate and output the yield for each year up to any chosen number of years, to be specified at the beginning of the program. Check your answer. .

2.9 Comparisons

We have seen how the BASIC language allows us to compare two numbers. We often wish to decide whether a particular value is larger or smaller than another. This is a process which is fundamental to sorting items of data. Throughout the course we will consider sorting methods in some detail, so let's start with the simplest case.

Example 4

Devise an algorithm in descriptive form to input two numbers and to output the larger of the two.

Comment

We have expressed our algorithms as flowcharts throughout most of this unit so this time we will use the descriptive method introduced in Unit 1.

Solution

1. Start.
2. Input first number.
3. Input second number.
4. If first number $>$ second number then go to 7 otherwise carry on to 5.
5. Output second number.
6. Go to 8.
7. Output first number.
8. Stop.

This is not the neatest solution, but is close to the layman's 'first attempt' at the problem. We will seek neater solutions when we return to sorting methods in a later unit.

Assignment 2

1. Devise a flowchart and write a BASIC program to input two numbers and output the smaller of the two. Modify the program so that it will process (a) five pairs of numbers, (b) any number of pairs of numbers.
2. Extend the 'mark - percentage' algorithm on page 41, and express it in the form of flowchart and BASIC program:
 - (a) to accommodate a class of any size;
 - (b) to calculate the average percentage mark;
 - (c) to pick out the highest mark.

Objectives of Unit 2

Now that you have completed this Unit, check that you are able to:

- Combine literal printing and variable print in PRINT statements
- Use , to space PRINT statements
- Use GOTO to repeat the use of a program
- Use a dummy value to terminate a program
- Use IF . . . THEN . . .
- Find the logical state of assertions including $>$, $<$, $=$
- Construct flowcharts
- Insert counters in flowcharts and programs to control the repeated use of part of a program or flowchart

Answers to SAQ's and Exercises

SAQ 1

- (a) AREA 48
 (b) LENGTH 8 WIDTH 6 AREA 48
 (c) LENGTH WIDTH AREA
 8 6 48
 (d) PRINT "LENGTH", B, "WIDTH", C
 (e) PRINT "LENGTH", B
 PRINT "WIDTH", C
 PRINT "AREA", A
 (f) PRINT "LENGTH", "WIDTH", ",", "AREA"
- └ this prints a blank

SAQ 2

All you need to do is add
 35 GOTO 15

SAQ 3

```
5  REM **CALCULATING SQUARES**
10 INPUT N
15 IF N = -9999 THEN 40
20 LET S = N*N
30 PRINT S
35 GOTO 5
40 REM *ALL DONE**
50 END
```

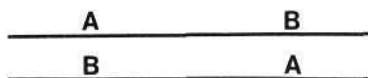
Program 13

(Note that this terminating value is not quite as satisfactory as using -9999 as a dummy mark. You can't have a mark of -9999 , but you might perhaps want to square -9999 ; this program would refuse to do it.)

SAQ 4

Values		Assertion		
A	B	Expressions	Its value	Its logical state
3	7	$A > B$	$3 > 7$	F
5	3	$A > B$	$5 > 3$	T
-3	5	$A > B$	$-3 > 5$	F
8	5	$A < B$	$8 < 5$	F
3	9	$A < B$	$3 < 9$	T
8	-2	$A < B$	$8 < -2$	F

If you got any of these wrong, look at them again on the number line



A to the left of B means $A < B$ true

A to the right of B means $A > B$ true

SAQ 5

- (a) 40 (b) 100 (c) 40
(d) 40 (e) 40

Your computer could help solve this problem for you. The statements

40 PRINT "40"
and 100 PRINT "100"

will cause the appropriate line to be output.

The following programs show how you could have solved (a) and (b) above.

Program to solve (a)

```
10 LET A = 7
20 LET B = -8
30 IF A-B < 0 THEN 100
40 PRINT "40"
50 GOTO 999
100 PRINT "100"
999 END
```

Program 14

Program to solve (b)

```
10 LET X = 3
20 LET Y = -3
30 IF X/Y = -1 THEN 100
40 PRINT "40"
50 GOTO 999
100 PRINT "100"
999 END
```

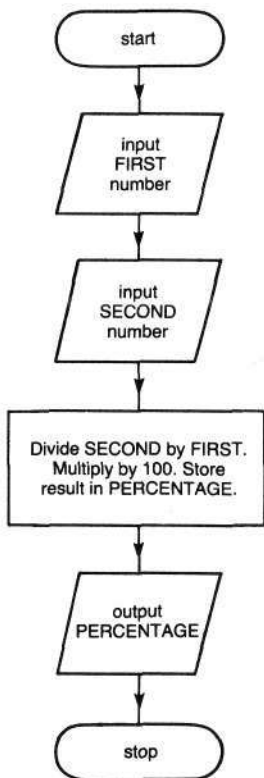
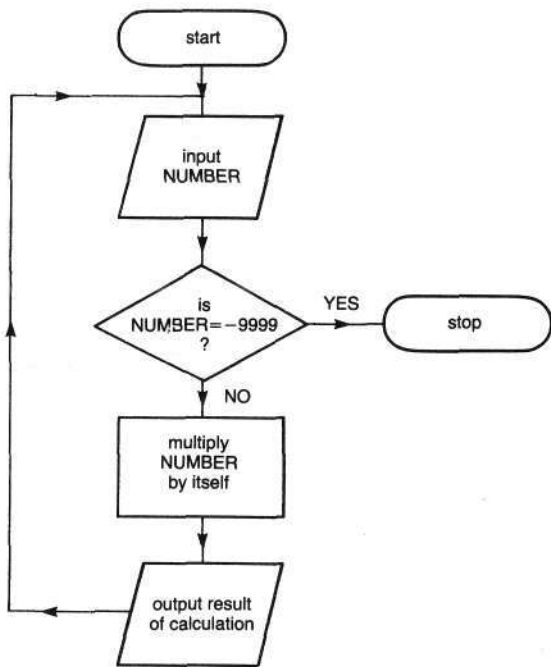
Program 15

Effect of running Program 14

```
RUN
40
READY.
```

Effect of running Program 15

```
RUN
100
READY.
```

SAQ 6**SAQ 7****SAQ 8**

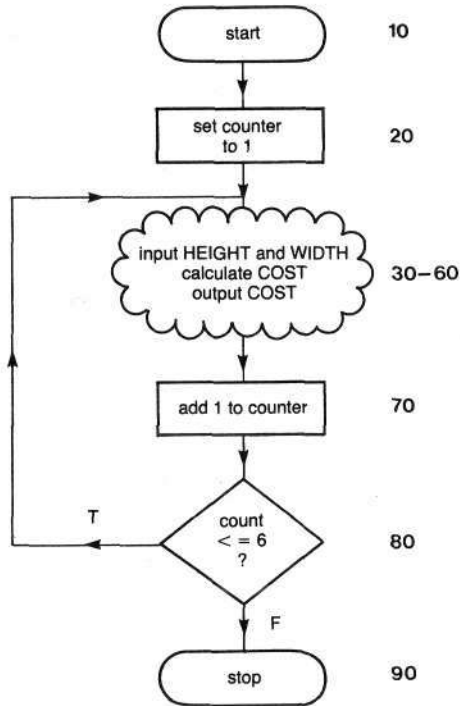
(a) 10 (b) 16

SAQ 9

30 IF C = 4 THEN 55

Exercise 1

1(a)



1(b)

```

10 REM **COST OF DOUBLE GLAZING**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 LET C=1
25 REM **NEXT INPUT**
30 PRINT "ENTER HEIGHT IN METRES"
35 INPUT H
40 PRINT "ENTER WIDTH IN METRES"
45 INPUT W
50 LET K=14*(H+W)+40*H*W+50
60 PRINT "WINDOW",C,"COST",K
70 LET C=C+1
80 IF C<=6 THEN 25
90 END
  
```

Lines 20, 70 and 80 are
the counter

Program 16

```

RUN
ENTER HEIGHT IN METRES
? 1.5
ENTER WIDTH IN METRES
? 2
WINDOW      1      COST      219
ENTER HEIGHT IN METRES
? 1.5
ENTER WIDTH IN METRES
  
```

```

? 3
WINDOW      2      COST      293
ENTER HEIGHT IN METRES
? 1.5
ENTER WIDTH IN METRES
? 4
WINDOW      3      COST      367
ENTER HEIGHT IN METRES
? 2.5
ENTER WIDTH IN METRES
? 2
WINDOW      4      COST      313
etc:

```

1(c)

```

10 REM **COST OF DOUBLE GLAZING**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
17 PRINT "ENTER NUMBER OF WINDOWS"
18 INPUT N
20 LET C=1
25 REM **NEXT INPUT**
30 PRINT "ENTER HEIGHT IN METRES"
35 INPUT H
40 PRINT "ENTER WIDTH IN METRES"
45 INPUT W
50 LET K=14*(H+W)+40*H*W+50
60 PRINT "WINDOW",C,"COST",K
65 PRINT
70 LET C=C+1
80 IF C<=N THEN 25
90 END

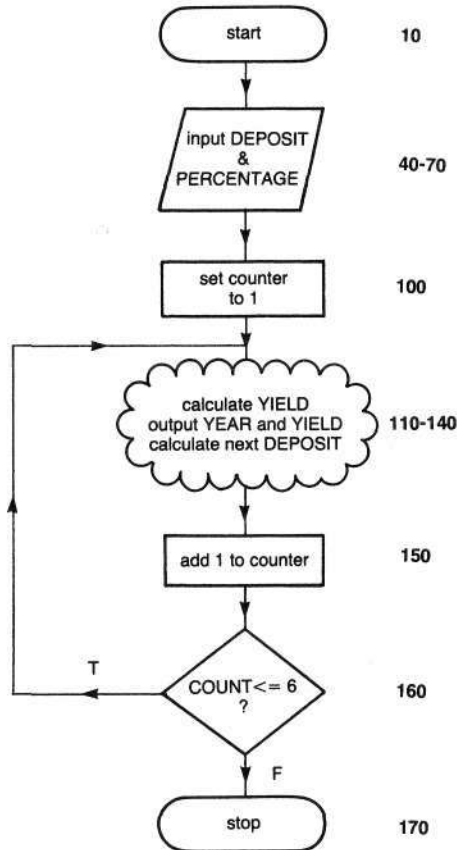
```

Program 17

If PRINT is entered as a program statement without anything else after it, the result is that a blank line is printed on the screen. This serves to space the lines of output in your display, and is useful because solid blocks of words are both unattractive and more difficult to read.

Exercise 2

2(a)



2 (b) Program

```
10 REM **COMPOUND INTEREST**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT "COMPOUND INTEREST TABLE"
30 PRINT
40 PRINT "ENTER DEPOSIT £";
50 INPUT D
60 PRINT "ENTER PERCENTAGE INTEREST (%>";
70 INPUT P
80 PRINT
90 REM **CALCULATE/PRINT TABLE**
100 LET C=1
110 REM **START OF CALC. LOOP**
120 LET Y=(P*D)/100
130 PRINT "YEAR";C;" --- YIELD --- £";Y
140 LET D=D+Y
150 LET C=C+1
160 IF C<=6 THEN 110
170 END
```

60

Program 18

RUN

ENTER DEPOSIT £ ? 500
ENTER PERCENTAGE INTEREST % ? 12.5
YEAR 1 --- YIELD --- £62.5
YEAR 2 --- YIELD --- £70.3125
YEAR 3 --- YIELD --- £79.1015625
YEAR 4 --- YIELD --- £88.9892578
YEAR 5 --- YIELD --- £100.112915
YEAR 6 --- YIELD --- £112.627029

```
10 REM **COMPOUND INTEREST**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT "COMPOUND INTEREST TABLE"
30 PRINT
35 PRINT "ENTER NUMBER OF YEARS";
36 INPUT N
40 PRINT "ENTER DEPOSIT £";
50 INPUT D
60 PRINT "ENTER PERCENTAGE INTEREST (%)";
70 INPUT P
80 PRINT
90 REM **CALCULATE/PRINT TABLE**
100 LET C=1
110 REM **START OF CALC. LOOP**
120 LET Y=(P*D)/100
130 PRINT "YEAR";C;" --- YIELD --- £";Y
140 LET D=D+Y
150 LET C=C+1
160 IF C<=N THEN 110
170 END
```

Program 19

RUN

COMPOUND INTEREST TABLE
ENTER NUMBER OF YEARS ? 4
ENTER DEPOSIT £ ? 1000
ENTER PERCENTAGE INTEREST (%) ? 13.75
YEAR 1 --- YIELD --- £137.5
YEAR 2 --- YIELD --- £156.40625
YEAR 3 --- YIELD --- £177.912109
YEAR 4 --- YIELD --- £202.375024

UNIT 3

Strings

3.1	What a string?	64
3.2	More about strings	66
3.3	PRINT . . . : . . .	66
3.4	INPUT "..."; . . .	69
3.5	Numbers and strings in PRINT statements	70
3.6	Standard letters	73
3.7	Patterns, files, READ with DATA	75
3.8	Sorting	81
	Assignment 3	84
	Objectives of Unit 3	84
	Answers to SAQ's and Exercises	85
	Appendix	90

3.1 What is a string?

The first two units were concerned with processing numbers. The layman often sees the computer as a 'number cruncher' but this is certainly not the main function of a computer, especially in a commercial environment. In this Unit we will see how a computer may be used to manipulate characters using the BASIC language.

By character we mean the alphabet in capitals, the ten digits 0-9, punctuation marks and some special characters as follows:

@, A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, W, X, Y, Z, [, \,], ↑, ←,

0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, :, ;, <, =, >, ?, Space, !, ,, #, \$, %, &, ., (,), +, *, -, /.

You have learnt to write programs using numbers (3, 57, -92, etc.) and variables (A, X, Z, etc.). BASIC also allows us to enter characters into the computer in groups.

These groups of characters are referred to as strings. Some examples of strings are:

CAT	(a word)
MARGARET THATCHER	(a name)
Z9)??27	(a mixture of characters)
ABC 123W	(a car registration number)

i.e. a string can be any mixture of characters – even a space is a very important character in a string!

As far as BASIC is concerned, a number is treated as a number when it is to be used to do some arithmetic, otherwise it is considered to be a string of numeric characters. When we look at a car or telephone number we see it as a group of numeric characters; we would not use this collection of digits to do any serious arithmetic.

Store locations for strings

How then can we signal to the computer that the group of characters which we are entering should be treated as numbers for arithmetic purposes, or as just a string of characters? The distinction is made in BASIC by how we label the storage locations into which we put the characters. If a store location name is followed by the symbol \$ then the characters which are entered into that location are treated as strings of characters.

You saw in Unit 1 that the store locations for numbers in a minimal BASIC system are the 286 locations:

A, A0, . . . A9
B, B0, etc

The store locations for strings in a minimal BASIC are a further 286 locations:

A\$, A0\$, . . . A9\$
etc
. . . Z7\$, Z8\$, Z9\$

You read these out loud as follows:

A\$ A string or A dollar
 B9\$ B nine string or B nine dollar

Thus you can now think of a microcomputer as having two areas for store locations: one for numbers and one for characters. This is illustrated in Figure 1.

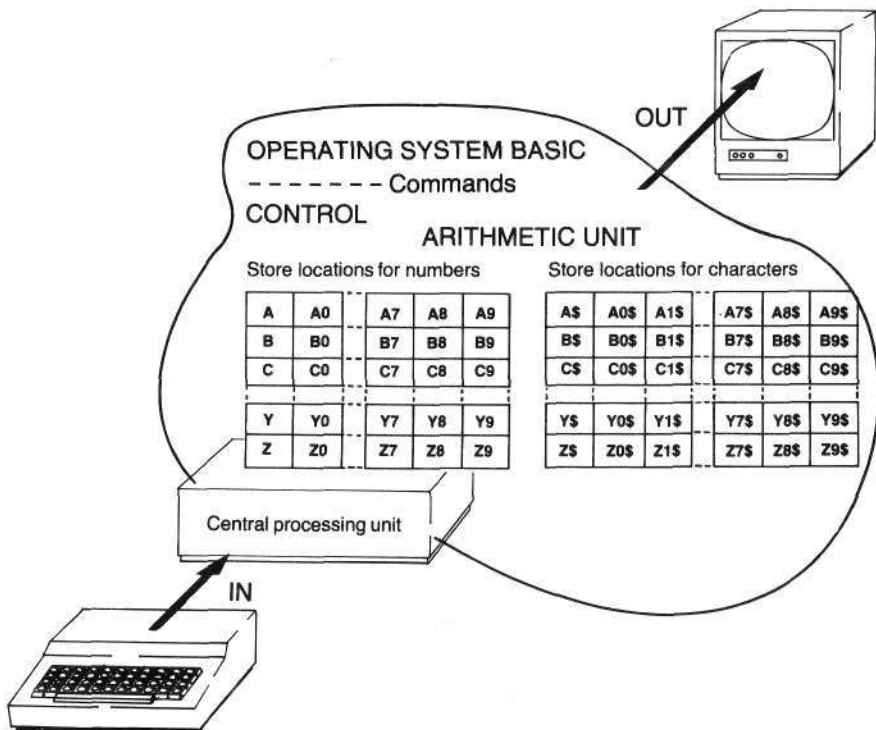


Figure 1 A summary of our system so far

“ ” with strings

Usually we have to show the computer that we want our string of characters to be treated as a string. To do this we put “ ” around the string. Thus we write

```
10 LET Q$ = "HELLO"
and
30 IF Q$ = "HELLO" THEN 80
and so on.
```

SAQ 1

Which of the following are valid store location names for strings:

- (a) A\$ (b) M8 (c) T7\$ (d) B9' (e) C\$3 (f) 8P\$ (g) 2\$ (h) 5\$L

SAQ 2

Which of the following are correct BASIC statements:

- (a) LET A = 87
- (b) LET B\$ = "FRED"
- (c) LET M\$ = 9583
- (d) LET K8 = "JAM POT"
- (e) LET L17 = 38

3.2. More about strings

'How long is a piece of string?' is a pertinent question here. In other words, how many characters can be input, stored or output as a single group? The Commodore 64 allows strings to be up to 255 characters in length. Initially in this course we will assume that a store location for strings will hold up to 40 characters, and that this restriction will apply to inputting and outputting strings. As our microcomputer screen is 40 characters wide this is a convenient restriction. So you must now think of a string memory location, not just as a labelled pigeon-hole, but as a location with 40 subdivisions, as shown in Figure 2.

	1	2	3	4	5					10					15					20					25					30					35					40				
AS	T	H	I	S		P	I	C	T	U	R	E		R	E	P	R	E	S	E	N	T	S																					
BS	S	T	R	I	N	G		V	A	R	I	A	B	L	E		S	T	O	R	E		L	O	C	A	T	I	O	N	S													
CS																																												
DS																																												
YS																																												
ZS	F	I	G	U	R	E		2																																				

Figure 2 Size of string store locations

We have been discussing strings as if they were new but you have met them before in Unit 1. There we used the PRINT statement to output messages which were enclosed in quotation marks. We implied that the string enclosed in quotation marks was output literally character by character. Then we saw in Unit 2 how the commas between the elements of a PRINT statement caused the strings to be spaced out across the screen or printer.

3.3 PRINT . . . ; . . .

From what we have covered so far you will realise that the layout of information on the screen is very important. This is just as true for strings as it is for numbers.

When handling textual information, ie strings of characters in the form of words or codes, we want the strings to be printed as in a sentence and not spaced out across the screen in print zones. The PRINT . . . ; . . . statement achieves this effect for us. PRINT H\$;T\$ will take the characters in store location H\$ and print them on

the left-hand side of the output device followed immediately by the characters from location T\$.

In the next few pages we are going to simulate a data recording service of the not too distant future and use it to demonstrate the inputting and outputting of strings. Let's start by writing a program which simulates a telephone answering service.

```
10 REM **TELE ANSWER**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 PRINT "HELLO"
40 PRINT "PLEASE STATE YOUR TELEPHONE NUMBER"
50 INPUT T$
60 PRINT
70 PRINT "HELLO",T$
80 PRINT
90 PRINT "HELLO",T$
100 PRINT
110 PRINT "HELLO", T$
120 PRINT
130 PRINT "HELLO"; " ";T$
140 END
```

Program 1 Printing strings

To help you analyse this program we have put below a 'trace' at the side of a typical run. The trace indicates which line in the program generates which line in the output.

RUN	Trace
HELLO	... 30
PLEASE STATE YOUR TELEPHONE NUMBER	... 40
? 58632	... 50
	... 60
HELLO58632	... 70
	... 80
HELLO58632	... 90
	... 100
HELLO 58632	... 110
	... 120
HELLO 58632	... 130
READY.	

Comments

- Trace 50 INPUT T\$ generated ? Our response was 58632 which the computer treats as a string and not as a number. (If we had written INPUT T, then 58632 would be treated as a number.)
- Trace 70 The PRINT . . . ; . . . on line 70 prints the 5 of the telephone number at the 15th position across the output line, whereas
- Trace 90 The PRINT . . . ; . . . of line 90 prints the 5 immediately adjacent to the O of HELLO.

Neither way is satisfactory, but:

- Trace 110 Lines 110 and 130 show alternative ways of introducing the required spaces, either by printing HELLO▽(110) or by inserting the string ▽ in its own right into the output statement. (▽ indicates a space.)

Program 1.

SAQ 3

Study this program and work out what the print output will be. Write down the output in the grid below.

```

7  PRINT CHR$(147)
10 PRINT "PRINT LAYOUT"
20 LET B$ = "BASIC"
30 LET C$ = "COURSE"
40 PRINT
50 PRINT B$, C$
60 PRINT
70 PRINT B$;C$
80 PRINT
90 PRINT B$; " ";C$
100 END

```

Program 2

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19

SAQ 4

Write a program which would print out the following:

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
B	A	S	I	C						B	A	S	I	C					
B	A	S	I	C	B	A	S	I	C	B	A	S	I	C	B	A	S	I	C
B	A	S	I	C		B	A	S	I	C		B	A	S	I	C			

3.4 INPUT "...";...

We have used the PRINT "." as a prompt for an INPUT statement in several of our programs so far. Most BASIC's, including the version used by the Commodore 64, have a facility to allow us to combine these two into one statement. Thus in the above program, we could replace:

```
40 PRINT "PLEASE STATE YOUR TELEPHONE NUMBER"
50 INPUT T$
```

with

```
40 INPUT "PLEASE STATE YOUR TELEPHONE NUMBER";T$
```

The INPUT statement will always generate a ? however, so in the next program we form the prompt into a direct question.

Also, in the last program we used the string "HELLO" several times. In the next program we will save a little typing by storing this string in location H\$ at the start of the program.

```
10 REM **TELE ANSWER**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 LET H$="HELLO"
40 PRINT H$
50 INPUT "WHAT IS YOUR TELEPHONE NUMBER!" T$
60 PRINT
70 PRINT H$, T$
80 PRINT
90 PRINT H$; T$
100 PRINT
110 PRINT H$;" ";T$
120 END
```

Program 3 The computer asks the questions

```
RUN
HELLO
WHAT IS YOUR TELEPHONE NUMBER? 58632
```

computer response to line 50

```
HELLO      58632
HELLO58632
HELLO58632
READY.
```

K Program 3.

SAQ 5

What would appear on the screen when this program was run assuming your name is John Smith and your age 45?

```
5 PRINT CHR$(147)
10 LET T$="THANK YOU"
20 INPUT "WHAT IS YOUR NAME!" N$
30 PRINT
40 INPUT "WHAT IS YOUR AGE!" A$
50 PRINT
60 PRINT T$, N$,A$
```

Program 4

3.5. Numbers and strings in print statements

We could have entered the telephone number of the previous program into a numeric store location. We would of course soon run into problems if the number were too long, or contained spaces (eg 01 693 4539). Let's compare how BASIC would output this data from numeric and string store locations.

In this program note how we use the string of characters in S\$ to print a scale across the output page.

```
10 REM **TELE ANSWER**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 LET H$="HELLO"
35 LET S$="1234567890123456789012345"
40 PRINT H$
50 INPUT "WHAT IS YOUR TELEPHONE NUMBER?" T$
55 INPUT "WILL YOU REPEAT THAT PLEASE?" T
60 PRINT S$
70 PRINT H$, T$
75 PRINT H$,T
80 PRINT S$
90 PRINT H$;T$
95 PRINT H$;T
100 PRINT S$
110 PRINT H$;" ";T$
115 PRINT H$;" ";T
120 END
```

Program-5 Printing strings and numbers


```

RUN
TELEPHONE ANSWER
HELLO
WHAT IS YOUR TELEPHONE NUMBER? 58632
WILL YOU REPEAT THAT PLEASE? 58632

```

Trace

```

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5
HELLO          5 8 6 3 2
HELLO          5 8 6 3 2
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5
HELLO58532
HELLO 58632
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5
HELLO 58632
HELLO 58632
READY.
RUN
TELEPHONE ANSWER
HELLO
WHAT IS YOUR TELEPHONE NUMBER?—58632
WILL YOU REPEAT THAT PLEASE?—58632

```

60 S\$ numbers each print position across the page.
75 note that the first digit 5 is placed at the 12th position, the 11th position is reserved
95 for the sign of the number in T, but if the sign is '+' it is not printed, and a space is left. A
115 similar effect occurs in 95 and 115.

```

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5
HELLO          -58632
HELLO          5 8 6 3 2
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5
HELLO—58632
HELLO—58632
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5
HELLO -58632
HELLO -58632
READY.

```

75
note the effect when T\$ and
95 T both hold -58632
115

[K] Program 5.

SAQ 6

Write a program to input your name as a string and your age as a number and to output the message, 'My name is and I am years old' with the normal spacing.

Data recording service

The following is a further example of how print layout is achieved in BASIC. We can imagine that in the not too distant future our TV set, telephone and computer will be linked together as an 'intelligent' terminal. On seeing an attractive advertisement we may 'dial' a number and the following dialogue might ensue.

```

HELLO
THIS IS A DATA-RECORDING SERVICE
PLEASE ENTER THE DETAILS AS REQUESTED

```

Trace
30
40
50
60

YOUR NAME? C. A. SMITH	70
YOUR TELEPHONE NUMBER? 23685	80
NUMBER OR NAME OF HOUSE? 77	90
ROAD? CHALMERS ROAD	100
TOWN OR CITY? WORTHING	110
YOUR POSTAL CODE? BR7 9QY	120
	130
	140
	150
	160
THANK YOU FOR ENQUIRY	170
	180
YOUR PERSONAL DETAILS HAVE BEEN RECORDED AS:	190
NAME C. A. SMITH TELEPHONE NO. 23685	200
ADDRESS 77 CHALMERS ROAD	210
WORTHING BR7 9QY	220
	230
DETAILS OF OUR SERVICES AND PRODUCTS	240
WILL BE SENT TO YOU	250
YOUR PERSONAL DETAILS WILL REMAIN CONFIDENTIAL	260

(Of course, instead of 'will be sent to you' it will eventually be 'will now be output to your terminal' as electronic mail replaces paper letters, and then the only details needed to be input would be a subscriber code.)

This simulated dialogue was achieved by the following program.

```

10 REM **DATA-RECORD**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 PRINT "HELLO"
40 PRINT "THIS IS A DATA-RECORDING SERVICE"
50 PRINT
60 PRINT "PLEASE ENTER THE DETAILS AS REQUESTED"
70 PRINT
80 INPUT "YOUR NAME?" N$
90 INPUT "YOUR TELEPHONE NUMBER?" T$
100 INPUT "NUMBER OR NAME OF HOUSE?" H$
110 INPUT "ROAD?" R$
120 INPUT "TOWN OR CITY?" C$
130 INPUT "YOUR POSTAL CODE?" P$
140 PRINT
150 PRINT
160 PRINT
170 PRINT "THANK YOU FOR YOUR ENQUIRY"
180 PRINT
190 PRINT "YOUR PERSONAL DETAILS HAVE BEEN RECORDED AS:"
200 PRINT "NAME"; N$; "TELEPHONE NO."; T$
210 PRINT "ADDRESS "; H$; " "; R$
220 PRINT
230 PRINT
240 PRINT "DETAILS OF OUR SERVICES AND PRODUCTS"
250 PRINT "WILL BE SENT TO YOU"

```

260 PRINT "YOUR PERSONAL DETAILS WILL REMAIN CONFIDENTIAL"
270 END

Program 6 Data recording service

Program 6.

3.6 Standard letters

A data recording service, such as we have just looked at, may be in the future, but standard personalised letters are with us now. Such a letter would be composed on a word-processor, but if your micro does not have word processing facilities available, you could achieve modest results using BASIC. Your own choice of letter will be left to you in Exercise 2.

Example 1

A bank recruiting office receives many enquiries about employment. Its policy is to interview suitable applicants initially at its local branch. A stereotyped letter is sent from the recruiting office to each applicant containing individual details of the proposed interview. Devise a BASIC program to write such a letter.

Solution

The following program would do this job.

```
10 REM **LETTER WRITER**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 INPUT A$ _____ applicant's name
40 INPUT B$ _____ date of letter of application
50 INPUT C$ _____ name of interviewer
60 INPUT D$ _____ time of interview
70 INPUT E$ _____ date of interview
80 INPUT F$ _____ location of interview
90 INPUT G$ _____ name of employee replying
95 REM **END OF INPUT**
100 PRINT
110 PRINT
120 PRINT "DEAR ";A$;" "
130 PRINT
140 PRINT "THANK YOU FOR YOUR LETTER OF THE"
150 PRINT B$;" WE INVITE YOU TO"
160 PRINT "ATTEND FOR A JOB INTERVIEW WITH"
170 PRINT C$;" AT ";D$;" ON THE"
180 PRINT E$;" AT OUR OFFICE, THE"
190 PRINT F$;"BRANCH."
200 PRINT
210 PRINT "YOURS SINCERELY"
220 PRINT
230 PRINT
240 PRINT G$
250 END
```

Program 7 Bank interview letter

This would result in the following run:

	Trace
RUN	
LETTER WRITER	30
? MISS JONES	40
? 13 OCTOBER	50
? MR FELLOWS	60
? 10.00 AM	70
? 20TH OCTOBER	80
? HIGH ST. SIDCUP	90
? C. A. SIDWELL	100
DEAR MISS JONES,	110
	120
	130
THANK YOU FOR YOUR LETTER OF THE	140
13 OCTOBER. WE INVITE YOU TO	150
ATTEND FOR A JOB INTERVIEW WITH	160
MR FELLOWS AT 10.00 AM ON THE	170
20 OCTOBER AT OUR OFFICE, THE	180
HIGH ST. SIDCUP BRANCH.	190
	200
YOUR SINCERELY	210
	220
C.A. SIDWELL	230

The user of the program might find it difficult to use since all he gets is a series of prompts ?. He might, therefore, make a skeletal aide-memoire to remind him of the structure of the letter:

? A\$
? B\$
? C\$
? D\$
? E\$
? F\$
? G\$

DEAR A\$,
THANK YOU FOR YOUR LETTER OF THE
B\$. WE INVITE YOU TO
ATTEND FOR A JOB INTERVIEW WITH
C\$ AT DS ON THE
E\$ AT OUR OFFICE, THE
F\$ BRANCH.

YOURS SINCERELY
G\$

Program 7

Exercise 1

An estate agent periodically sends out a letter to check whether clients on his

books are still looking for a property, and that his details of their requirements (eg type of property, price range, etc) are correct. Devise a BASIC program to write such a letter.

Exercise 2

We all write letters requesting things, eg details of a product, a service, a holiday, a job, etc. Devise a BASIC program to write a letter which will cover as wide a range of applications as possible, leaving you to fill in only the particular details of each enquiry.

3.7 Patterns, files, READ with DATA

READ with DATA

So far in this course we have entered data at the keyboard during the execution of a program as a response to an INPUT statement. Another way of introducing data into a program is to store it in DATA statements within the program itself and then to READ the items into the program from the DATA statements as required. Usually, data is stored at the end of a program, or program segment.

Every time the computer comes to a READ statement it takes the next item of data from the DATA queue and places it in the location specified in the READ statement. For a READ statement to be executed there must be a corresponding item of DATA available in the DATA queue.

Thus in this program the following happens.

```
10 READ A$
20 READ B$
30 READ C$
100 DATA TOM, DICK
110 DATA HARRY
```

Program 8

At 10, READ tells the computer to take the first item of DATA and put it in location A\$. The first DATA item occurs in line 100 and is TOM so TOM goes in location A\$. At the next READ statement (20), the computer takes the next DATA item which is DICK and so on. You can check that this has happened by putting:

```
40 PRINT A$
50 PRINT B$
60 PRINT C$
```

into the program.

```
RUN
TOM
DICK
HARRY
```

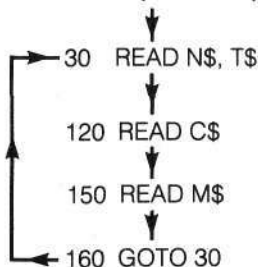
SAQ 7

What is wrong with this program segment?

```
10 READ A$
20 READ B
30 READ C
40 READ D$
50 DATA PAUL, MARY, 63
```

Program 9

A more complex example is shown by this program segment:



```

200 DATA BENNY, COPPER, DRAPER
210 DATA EDDIE, GWYNNE
220 DATA HETTIE
230 DATA MORLEY, PROSSER, SMYTHE, WEEKS
240 DATA WILSON, WRIGHT
  
```

Here is what happens:

First time round loop

```

N$ reads BENNY
T$ reads COPPER
C$ reads DRAPER
M$ reads EDDIE
  
```

Stores at end of first time round

N\$	BENNY
T\$	COPPER
C\$	DRAPER
M\$	EDDIE

Second time round loop

```

N$ reads GWYNNE
T$ reads HETTIE
C$ reads MORLEY
M$ reads PROSSER
  
```

(i.e. next unread item of DATA)

Stores at end of second time round

N\$	GWYNNE
T\$	HETTIE
C\$	MORLEY
M\$	PROSSER

SAQ 8

What will the final state of the stores be when all the data has been read?

SAQ 9

What would the contents of locations A\$, B\$ and C\$ be after this program segment has read all the DATA items?

```
5  REM **SAQ 9**
10 READ A$
15 REM **BRANCH BACK**
20 READ B$
30 READ C$
40 GOTO 15
45 REM ****
50 DATA TINKER, TAYLOR, SOLDIER
60 DATA SAILOR, RICH MAN
```

Program 10

RESTORE

BASIC also has a further reading instruction, RESTORE. When this is encountered, no matter how far down the DATA list the program has READ, the next READ instruction will go back and read the first item in the DATA list once more, and then continue reading through the list, i.e. the second item, third item and so on. This can be very useful if you wish to access the same data more than once in the course of a program, but only wish to key in the data once. Care must be taken that the number of READs and the number of DATA items to read ties up—otherwise a message OUT OF DATA will appear, halting the program run.

Files and records

Quite often we want to record data which is of one kind, i.e. it makes up a file of information. A telephone directory is a good example of what in data processing is called a file, that is a collection of similar records. Each record has the form

Name	Address	Telephone number
------	---------	------------------

and is said to consist of a number of fields – in this case three: name, address and telephone number. A record is then a collection of fields and a file is a collection of records. A telephone directory is arranged in alphabetical order of surnames which gives it a simple structure.

Comparing strings

We may wish to compare strings. Suppose, for example, we have a personal telephone directory in our microcomputer and we wish to find out whether SMITH is in our record. The computer will have to compare the string "SMITH" against all the strings in the name field of our directory. It can do this very easily because each letter is represented inside the computer by a binary code. Thus

A is 100 0001

B is 100 0010

and so on. (See the Appendix to this unit for a full list of binary codes.) So words placed in alphabetical order on paper will be represented in the computer by codes in numerical order.

Thus if

A\$ = CAT
B\$ = DOG
C\$ = CAT
D\$ = FISH
E\$ = CATS

A\$ = C\$

But B\$ > A\$ (it is further on in the alphabet)
and E\$ > A\$ (the extra S on CAT puts it after CAT in alphabetical order.)

We shall now use this facility in our examples.

Example 2

Set up a data file of names and associated telephone numbers. Write a BASIC program to search through the file to find a particular name, and if found then output the associated telephone number.

Solution

We could attempt a descriptive algorithm as follows:

1. Start.
2. Input query name.
3. Read next record of the data file (i.e. name and number).
4. If the end of the file has been reached (data name = "ZZZZ") then output message 'not found in file' and go to 7 otherwise carry on to 5.
5. If query name = data name then output name and number and go to 7 otherwise carry on to 6.
6. Return to 3 for next record.
7. Stop.

However, BASIC does not generally allow statements as complicated as 4 and 5, and so we have to split up these statements as shown in the next algorithm:

1. Start.
2. Input query name.
3. Read next record from data file.
4. If the end of file has been reached then go to 7 otherwise carry on to 5.
5. If query name = data name then go to 9 otherwise carry on to 6.
6. Return to 3 for next record.
7. Output message 'not in file'.
8. Stop.
9. Output name and number.
10. Stop.

INDEX

Q\$ = query name
N\$ & T\$ form data record
N\$ = data name
T\$ = data telephone number

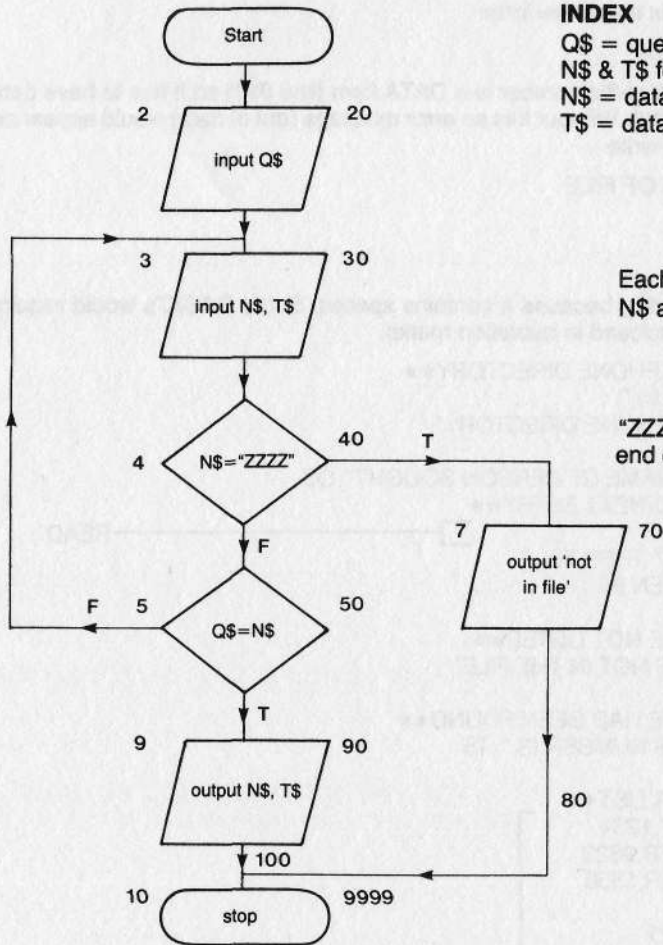


Figure 3 Searching a telephone directory

Now each record contains two fields on this occasion: name and number.

Field 1	Field 2
Name N\$	Telephone Number T\$
e.g. BENNY	1234

so each DATA item must contain information for each field. Thus the READ line will be:

READ N\$, T\$

and the DATA lines are of the form:

DATA BENNY, 1234

Notice that the end-of-file number is a DATA item (line 310) so it has to have data to fill T\$ as well as N\$. Without this an error message (out of data) would appear on the screen. So we write

DATA ZZZZ, END OF FILE

and not just

DATA ZZZZ

This is an open string because it contains spaces. Some BASIC's would require this string to be enclosed in quotation marks.

```
10 REM **TELEPHONE DIRECTORY**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
16 PRINT "TELEPHONE DIRECTORY"
18 PRINT
20 INPUT "SURNAME OF PERSON SOUGHT";Q$
25 REM **READ NEXT ENTRY**
30 READ N$,T$
40 IF N$="ZZZZ" THEN 70
50 IF Q$=N$ THEN 90
60 GOTO 30
65 REM **NAME NOT LISTED**
70 PRINT Q$;" IS NOT IN THE FILE"
80 GOTO 9990
85 REM **NAME HAD BEEN FOUND**
90 PRINT Q$;" 'S NUMBER IS ";T$
100 GOTO 9990
190 REM **DATA LIST**
200 DATA BENNY,1234
210 DATA COPPER,9823
220 DATA DRAPER,1850
230 EDDIE,7294
240 GWYNNE,5821
250 HETTIE,4539
260 MORLEY,7830
270 PROSSER,1383
280 DATA SMYTHE,1147
290 DATA WEEKS,5529
300 DATA WILSON,9936
310 DATA ZZZ,END OF FILE
9990 REM **ALL FINISHED**
9999 END
```

Diagram illustrating the flow of data from the DATA lines to the READ statement. A line labeled "READ" points to line 30 (READ N\$,T\$). A line labeled "DATA" points to the DATA lines (200-310).

Typical run

```
RUN
TELEPHONE DIRECTORY
SURNAME OF PERSON SOUGHT? EDDIE
EDDIE'S NUMBER IS 7294
READY.
```

```
RUN
TELEPHONE DIRECTORY
SURNAME OF PERSON SOUGHT? BROWNE
BROWNE IS NOT IN THE FILE
READY.
RUN
TELEPHONE DIRECTORY
SURNAME OF PERSON SOUGHT? WEEKS
WEEK'S NUMBER IS 5529
READY.
RUN
TELEPHONE DIRECTORY
SURNAME OF PERSON SOUGHT? WEEK
WEEK IS NOT IN THE FILE
```

In the fourth run we entered the name "WEEK" whereas the name "WEEKS" was actually in the file. The computer compares these patterns of characters and finds them unequal. If we were looking through a telephone directory we might realise that we were really looking for WEEKS rather than WEEK. We could of course, re-run the program with a variety of spellings of a name, if we were in doubt.

Program 11.

SAQ 10

What changes would you have to make to Program 11 to input a person's telephone number and output the subscriber's name or 'is not in list'.

3.8 Sorting

You will have noticed that the telephone directory data in Example 2 was in alphabetical order as you would expect. It would be difficult for the user in normal practice if this were not so. However, our solution to this searching problem did not use this information; we just searched through the data file record by record until we found the name, or reached the end of the file. Our algorithm would have worked equally well had the data not been in alphabetical order. We shall spend some time later in the course sorting and searching data, at which point you will realise the advantages of sorting data into alphabetical order.

Let's make a modest start with this problem.

Example 3

Write a BASIC program to enter two names into the computer and output that name which would come first in alphabetical order.

Solution

Descriptive algorithm

1. Start.
2. Input first name.
3. Input second name.
4. If first name < second name then 7 otherwise carry on to 5.
5. Output second name.
6. Go to 8.
7. Output first name.
8. Stop.

An outline flowchart for the solution of this problem is shown in Figure 4.

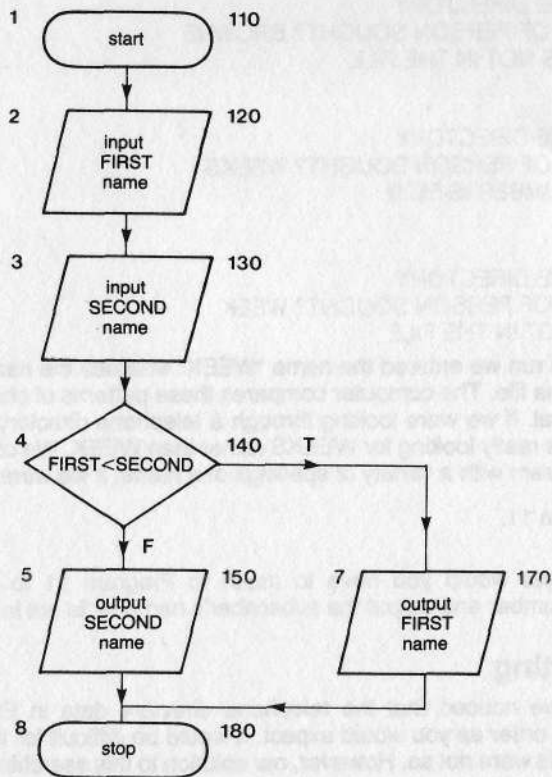


Figure 4 Finding the first of two in alphabetical order

```

100 PRINT CHR$(147)
110 REM **FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER**
115 PRINT "ALPHA-ORDER PROGRAM"
120 INPUT "FIRST NAME?" AS
130 INPUT "SECOND NAME?" BS
135 REM **TESTING AND OUTPUT**
140 IF AS<BS THEN 170
150 PRINT "FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER is ";BS
160 GOTO 180
170 PRINT "FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER IS ";AS
180 END
  
```

Program 12

Typical run

```

RUN
ALPHA-ORDER PROGRAM
FIRST NAME? BROWN
SECOND NAME? SMITH
FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER IS BROWN
  
```

```

READY.
RUN
ALPHA-ORDER PROGRAM
FIRST NAME? SMITH
SECOND NAME? BROWN
FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER IS BROWN
  
```

K Program 12.

The 3 card trick

Suppose now that we wanted to input three names and output the name that comes first in alphabetical order. A standard solution to this would be to follow the approach in Figure 5.

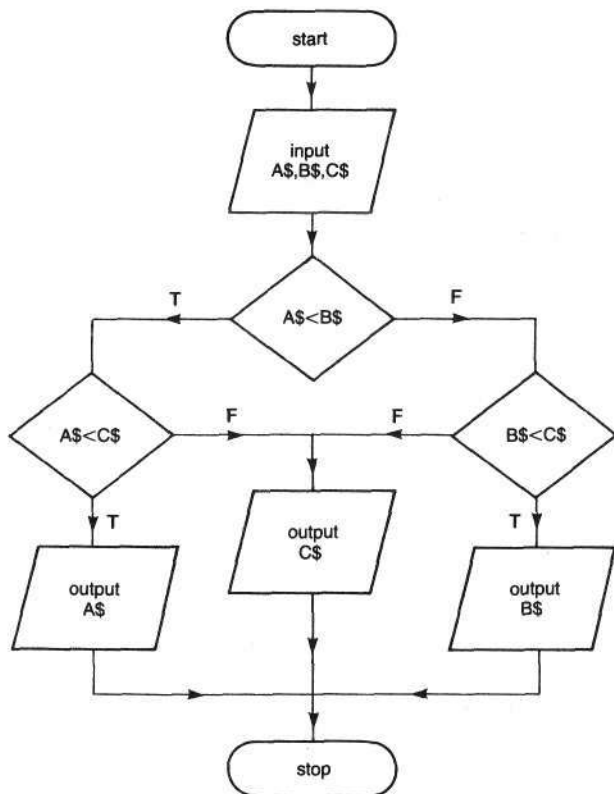


Figure 5 Finding the first of three in alphabetical order

When asked to solve this problem most students present an answer similar to the algorithm in Figure 5. It is a perfectly good solution, but it bodes ill for the future. Future trouble stems from the fact that we have had to utilise 3 decision and 3 output functions. This method would overtax our patience and ingenuity if we tried to repeat it for 4, 5 . . . let alone 10 names. The fundamental problem is allowing each variable to retain its own individual storage location, and how we are best able to label that location.

A simpler method of solving this problem is to input the names one by one and to store lowest-so-far in A\$. The program retains only lowest-so-far, destroying all the other discarded data. In the next Exercise we suggest you try this approach to solving the problem.

Exercise 3

Write a BASIC program to input three names and output that name which would come first in alphabetical order using the method discussed in the last few lines.

Exercise 4

A data file of European countries and their capital cities is suggested below. Write a BASIC program to use this file as the basis of a quiz with the user, presenting him with the country and asking him to name the capital city. Respond to his input by telling him whether he is correct or not, and in the latter case giving him the correct answer.

```
140 DATA FRANCE, PARIS
150 DATA WEST GERMANY, BONN
160 DATA THE NETHERLANDS, THE HAGUE
170 DATA POLAND, WARSAW
180 DATA ITALY, ROME
190 DATA SPAIN, MADRID
200 DATA PORTUGAL, LISBON
210 DATA HUNGARY, BUDAPEST
220 DATA DENMARK, COPENHAGEN
230 DATA NORWAY, OSLO
240 DATA ZZZZ, END OF FILE.
```

Assignment 3

1. Compose a descriptive algorithm, and draw a flowchart to accompany the BASIC program in program 12.
2. Modify your program for Exercise 4 to count the numbers of correct and incorrect responses, and to give a summary of the marks at the end of the quiz.
3. Devise an algorithm and write a BASIC program to do the following task. Store several words as individual letters in DATA statements, e.g. the words 'algorithm' and 'flowchart' could be stored:

```
900 DATA A,L,G,O,R,I,T,H,M
910 DATA F,L,O,W,C,H,A,R,T
```

Count the number of vowels and consonants contained in the words, and output the totals of these counts together with the ratio total number of vowels/total number of consonants.

Objectives of Unit 3

Now that you have completed this Unit, check that you are able to use the following in simple programs:

String storage locations

PRINT ...;

INPUT "...";...
 READ
 DATA (one field only)
 IF A\$ = B\$ THEN ...
 DATA (more than one field)
 Simple sorting procedure



Answers to SAQ's and Exercises

SAQ 1

Valid string locations: A\$, T7\$.

Of the others, M8 and B9 are number store locations.

The rest are neither number nor string store locations.

SAQ 2

(a), (b) and (e) are correct but (e) is not acceptable in minimal BASIC.

(c) is incorrect: M\$ is a string location so you need "9583"

(d) is incorrect: K8 is a number store location so the string "JAM POT" cannot be assigned to it.

SAQ 3

P	R	I	N	T		L	A	Y	O	U	T								
B	A	S	I	C						C	O	U	R	S	E				
B	A	S	I	C	C	O	U	R	S	E									
B	A	S	I	C		C	O	U	R	S	E								

SAQ 4

```
10 LET B$ = "BASIC"
20 PRINT B$, B$
30 PRINT B$; B$; B$; B$
40 PRINT B$; " "; B$; " "; B$
50 END
```

Program 13

SAQ 5

```
WHAT IS YOUR NAME? JOHN SMITH
WHAT IS YOUR AGE? 45
THANK YOU JOHN SMITH 45
```

SAQ 6

```
10 INPUT "WHAT IS YOUR NAME?" NS
20 INPUT "WHAT IS YOUR AGE?" A
30 PRINT "MY NAME IS ";NS;" AND I AM ";
40 PRINT A; " YEARS OLD"
```

Program 14

Exercise 1

Exercises 1 and 2 are very similar in nature and an answer for Exercise 1 has not been included.

Exercise 2

```
10 REM **ENQUIRY LETTER**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 PRINT "DETAILS OF ADDRESSEE"
40 PRINT
50 INPUT "NAME . . . ?" N$
60 INPUT "STREET . . . ?" S$
70 INPUT "TOWN . . . ?" T$
80 PRINT
90 INPUT "DATE FOR THIS LETTER?" D$
100 PRINT
110 PRINT "DETAILS OF PRODUCT/SERVICE"
120 PRINT
130 PRINT "ITEM OF INTEREST"
140 INPUT I$
150 PRINT "SOURCE OF INFORMATION"
160 INPUT A$
170 INPUT "DATE OF SOURCE?" E$
180 PRINT
190 PRINT
200 PRINT
210 PRINT
220 PRINT N$
230 PRINT S$
240 PRINT T$
250 PRINT
260 PRINT
170 PRINT D$
280 FOR Z=1 TO 2000
290 NEXT Z
295 PRINT CHR$(147)
297 REM **LETTER PRODUCTON**
300 PRINT "DEAR SIR,"
310 PRINT
320 PRINT "WILL YOU KINDLY SEND ME DETAILS OF"
330 PRINT I$;","
340 PRINT "AS ITEMISED IN THE"
350 PRINT A$
360 PRINT "DATED ";E$;". "
370 PRINT
380 PRINT
390 PRINT "YOUR FAITHFULLY"
400 PRINT
410 PRINT
420 PRINT
430 PRINT "O.L. SEYMOUR"
440 END
```

Program 15

420 PRINT
430 PRINT"O.L. SEYMOUR"

As explained in Unit 1, PRINT CHR\$(147) clears the screen display, leaving it blank, it does not affect the contents of any variables.

If we wish to display information for a given amount of time, before we clear the screen and then display something else, we can use a dummy loop. This is a FOR...NEXT... loop which doesn't contain any processing instructions. It still takes the computer a short time to count through the loop, and so causes a delay. The larger the number at the end of the FOR... statement, the longer the delay. Lines 280 and 290 of Program 15 illustrate this.

Typical run

RUN
DETAILS OF ADDRESSEE

NAME...? E P SOFTWARE LTD
STREET...? EDGWARE ROAD
TOWN...? LONDON

DATE FOR THIS LETTER? 12TH OCTOBER 1980

DETAILS OF PRODUCT/SERVICE

ITEM OF INTEREST
? BUSINESS SOFTWARE PACKAGES
SOURCE OF INFORMATION
? MAGAZINE "MODERN COMPUTING"
DATE OF SOURCE? 10TH OCTOBER

E P SOFTWARE LTD
EDGWARE ROAD
LONDON

12TH OCTOBER 1980

DEAR SIR,

WILL YOU KINDLY SEND ME DETAILS OF
BUSINESS SOFTWARE PACKAGES,
AS ITEMISED IN THE
MAGAZINE "MODERN COMPUTING"
DATED 10TH OCTOBER.

YOURS FAITHFULLY,

O.L. SEYMOUR

SAQ 7

Line 20 will try to read the second DATA item which is MARY, which is a string, but the location in line 20 is a number location. The computer would stop and indicate a syntax error. To read "MARY", line 20 must be 20 READ B\$

Line 40 calls for a fourth DATA item but there are only three items in line 50.

SAQ 8

N\$	SMYTHE
T\$	WEEKS
C\$	WILSON
M\$	WRIGHT

SAQ 9

A\$ TINKER
 B\$ SAILOR
 C\$ RICH MAN

Notice that "RICH MAN" is read as one item since there is no comma between the two words. If you run this program you will get an "out of data" message. Why?

SAQ 10

Calling the number A\$, changes are needed to lines 20, 50, 70 and 90 as follows:

```
20 INPUT "NUMBER OF PERSON SOUGHT?" A$
50 IF A$= T$ THEN 90
70 PRINT "SUBSCRIBER NUMBER"; A$; "IS NOT IN FILE"
90 PRINT "SUBSCRIBER NUMBER"; A$; "IS"; N$
```

Exercise 3

A simple method of solving this problem is shown in the Program 16. The names are input one by one, and the 'lowest so far' always stored in A\$. The program, however, only retains this one item of information, all other data is lost.

```
10 REM **FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
17 PRINT "ALPHA-ORDER PROGRAM"
20 INPUT "FIRST NAME";B$
25 REM **NEXT INPUT**
30 INPUT "NEXT NAME";B$
40 IF B$="ZZZ" THEN 85
50 IF A$<B$ THEN 65
60 LET A$=B$
65 REM **OUTPUT**
70 PRINT "FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER SO FAR IS ";A$
80 GOTO 25
85 REM **FINAL ANSWER**
90 PRINT A$;" WAS OVERALL FIRST"
100 END
RUN
```

Program 16

```
ALPHA-ORDER PROGRAM
FIRST NAME? TOM
NEXT NAME? SID
FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER SO FAR IS SID
NEXT NAME? JOE
FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER SO FAR IS JOE
NEXT NAME? PETE
FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER SO FAR IS JOE
```

NEXT NAME? FRED
FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER SO FAR IS FRED
NEXT NAME? BILL
FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER SO FAR IS BILL
NEXT NAME? RON
FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER SO FAR IS BILL
NEXT NAME? ALAN
FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER SO FAR IS ALAN
NEXT NAME? ZZZZ
ALAN WAS OVERALL FIRST
READY

Exercise 4

```
10 REM **EUROPEAN CAPITALS QUIZ**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT "'NAME THE CAPITAL' QUIZ"
25 REM **READ NEXT LIST ENTRY**
30 READ C$, T$
40 IF C$="ZZZ" THEN 125
50 PRINT "WHAT IS THE CAPITAL OF ";C$
60 INPUT A$
70 IF A$=T$ THEN 105
80 PRINT "NO! SORRY, THE CAPITAL OF"
90 PRINT C$;" IS ";T$
100 GOTO 25
105 REM **RIGHT ANSWER**
110 PRINT "YES! THAT'S RIGHT!"
120 GOTO 25
125 REM **QUIZ FINISHED**
130 PRINT "THAT'S THE END OF THE QUIZ"
135 END
137 REM **DATA LIST**
140 DATA FRANCE,PARIS
150 DATA WEST GERMANY,BONN
160 DATA THE NETHERLANDS,THE HAGUE
170 DATA POLAND,WARSAW
180 DATA ITALY,ROME
190 DATA SPAIN,MADRID
200 DATA PORTUGAL,LISBON
210 DATA HUNGARY,BUDAPEST
220 DATA DENMARK,COPENHAGEN
230 DATA NORWAY,OSLO
240 DATA ZZZ,END OF FILE
```

Program 17

```
RUN
'NAME THE CAPITAL' QUIZ
? PARIS
YES! THAT'S RIGHT!
WHAT IS THE CAPITAL OF WEST GERMANY
? BERLIN
NO SORRY! THE CAPITAL OF
WEST GERMANY IS BONN
WHAT IS THE CAPITAL OF THE NETHERLANDS
```

? HAGUE
 NO SORRY! THE CAPITAL OF
 THE NETHERLANDS IS THE HAGUE
 WHAT IS THE CAPITAL OF POLAND
 ? WARSAW
 YES! THAT'S RIGHT!
 WHAT IS THE CAPITAL OF ITALY
 ? ROME
 YES! THAT'S RIGHT!
 WHAT IS THE CAPITAL OF SPAIN
 ? MADRID
 YES! THAT'S RIGHT!
 WHAT IS THE CAPITAL OF PORTUGAL
 ? LISBON
 YES! THAT'S RIGHT!
 WHAT IS THE CAPITAL OF HUNGARY
 ? PRAGUE
 NO SORRY! THE CAPITAL OF
 HUNGARY IS BUDAPEST
 WHAT IS THE CAPITAL OF DENMARK
 ? COPANHEEN
 NO SORRY! THE CAPITAL OF
 DENMARK IS COPENHAGEN
 WHAT IS THE CAPITAL OF NORWAY
 ? OSLO
 YES! THAT'S RIGHT!
 THAT'S THE END OF THE QUIZ
 READY.

Appendix

American Standard Code for Information Interchange or ASCII Code

That part of the code which concerns us here is shown below.

	32		1	49
!	33		2	50
"	34		3	51
#	35		4	52
\$	36		5	53
%	37		6	54
&	38		7	55
'	39		8	56
(	40		9	57
)	41	:	:	58
*	42	:	:	59
+	43	<	<	60
,	44	=	=	61
-	45	>	>	62
.	46	?	?	63
/	47	@	@	64
0	48	A	A	65

B	66	R	82
C	67	S	83
D	68	T	84
E	69	U	85
F	70	V	86
G	71	W	87
H	72	X	88
I	73	Y	89
J	74	Z	90
K	75	[	91
L	76	£	92
M	77	]	93
N	78	↑	94
O	79	<	95
P	80		
Q	81		

96—127 and 161—191 Graphics characters

133—140 function keys

You can obtain any of the ASCII characters by using the statement

PRINT CHR\$(Code number)

for example

PRINT CHR\$(61)

will cause an equals sign,(=) to be displayed.

UNIT 4

Lists

4.1	Variables	94
4.2	Lists	94
4.3	List variables	94
4.4	List input and output	96
4.5	The FOR . . . NEXT . . . loop	100
4.6	Nested loops	105
4.7	Interchanging	108
	Assignment 4	112
	Objectives of Unit 4	113
	Answers to SAQ's and Exercises	113

4.1 Variables

We have already seen how a memory location may store several different values during the course of a program's execution. Thus the value in a store location may vary during a run, and so we often refer to the location names as variables in a program. Thus the 286 store labels:

A, A0, A1, . . . A9, B, B0, . . . Z8, Z9

are called numeric variables, and their counterparts:

A\$, A0\$, A1\$, . . . A9\$, B\$, B0\$, . . . Z8\$, Z9\$

are called string variables. The store labels are used in expressions in program statements just as mathematicians use variables in equations.

4.2 Lists

Lists and supermarkets seem inextricably linked. We go in with a list of items which we wish to buy, and emerge with the items and a list of prices in the form of a receipt. The list of prices results from the process of transferring the items from the basket to the counter. This is a fairly random process but we could have given the list a more meaningful order in a variety of ways. With a lot of effort we could have taken the items out of the basket in order of price, i.e. the cheapest first, the next cheapest next, and so on with the most expensive last, so that the till roll of prices would be in order of cost. Similarly, we could have taken them out of the basket in order of weight, the lightest first through to the heaviest last; and by so doing impose a completely different order on the receipt list. Being able to relate the position in the list in some way to the value of the item is the most useful feature of lists, as we shall see by the end of this Unit.

4.3 List variables

Most of the data that we have considered so far can be classified into sets. We have considered sets of test marks, sets of names and associated telephone numbers, sets of countries and their capital cities. Most data can be classified in some way. If we are collecting data for some purpose, this very purpose gives the set of values common characteristics. There are obvious advantages to naming the storage locations for items in a set of data in a way which emphasises that all the items belong to one set. Even better, it would be useful if the storage location names identified the position of an item within the set.

For example, storage, or variable, notation which emphasises that the values are in some way associated with each other, and allocates a position within the set. This is achieved in the following way.

Consider a set of marks in a teacher's mark book. They form a natural list and could be allocated storage locations in the following way:

Item

The first member of the M-list is 42
 The second member of the M-list is 67
 The third member of the M-list is 90
 etc . . .

Storage location symbol

M(1) = 42
 M(2) = 67
 M(3) = 90

M(1), M(2), M(3) are like separate memory locations. You can take any of the 572 store locations and put numbers in brackets after them to make list store locations, e.g.

List name

M(I)
 A0(I)
 C\$(I)
 Q6\$(I)

List store locations in that list

M(1), M(2), M(3) . . .
 A0(1), A0(2), A0(3) . . .
 C\$(1), C\$(2), C\$(3) . . .
 Q6\$(1), Q6\$(2), Q6\$(3) . . .

The number in the brackets (here shown as 1) is called the index of the list, and may be any positive integer up to a limit set by your computer. We called it the M-list, the M standing for 'mark'.

String lists

As you can see from the table above, lists can be string lists as well as numeric lists. Thus if you name a list M(I), it is clearly a list of numbers but M\$(I) would be a list of strings, e.g. a list of names could be stored:

Index	Item	Variable name
1	Jones	N\$(1), or NAME\$(1)
2	Alan	N\$(2), or NAME\$(2)
3	Smith	N\$(3), or NAME\$(3)
etc	etc	etc

Figure 1 String list names

Lists and arrays

A table of data, like that shown in Figure 1, is often referred to as an array of data. With the data displayed in rows and columns in this way (indexed by item), a table is often referred to as a two-dimensional array. A list (i.e. just one column of data) is similarly called a one-dimensional array. We will see how BASIC provides for two-dimensional arrays in a later Unit.

DIM or how long is a list?

As long as you choose! We said that the index may be any reasonable positive integer, and within the overall memory limitations of a particular computer, we can choose a list to be of any desired length, provided that we warn the system first. With the Commodore 64 you do not need to warn the computer of lists of 10 or fewer items, with 11 or more items you use a DIMENSION statement:

line number DIM A (length of list)

which must appear in the program before you use the array A. So in this unit we include DIM statements. Even though the Commodore 64 computer does not need DIM statements for small arrays, it is alright to leave the DIM statements in your programs.

Items and index numbers

The following paper and pencil exercises should reinforce your understanding of what is meant by the terms item and index, and their often only fleeting relationship. They also prepare the ground for the interchange-sort procedure which we will consider in detail later in this Unit.

Example 1

Transfer the item of lowest value in the following list to position 1, by comparing in turn each of the values in the remainder of the list with the current value at position 1. Interchange the items if the one in the remainder of the list is lower than that at position 1. (It is easier to do than to describe!)

List: 3, 42, -8, 9, -11

Start		Compare & interchange stages			
position or index	item	1st run c	2nd run c&i	3rd run c	4th run c&i
1	3	3 ←	-8 ←	-8 ←	-11 ←
2	42	42 ←	42 ←	42 ←	42 ←
3	-8	-8	3 ←	3 ←	3 ←
4	9	9	9	9 ←	9 ←
5	-11	-11	-11	-11	-8 ←

Figure 2 Sort to place lowest number first

SAQ 1

Carry out the procedure shown in Example 1 for the following list of numbers:

6,8,4,7,3,9,1.

4.4 List input and output

Before we can manipulate the items in a list we have to get the list of items into the computer, and after processing usually get another list out.

Example 2

Write a BASIC program to input three numbers into a list and output the elements of the list in reverse order.

Solution

We will call the list A(I). The required program is then:

```

10 REM **EXAMPLE 2**
12 REM **REVERSING A SHORT LIST**
13 PRINT CHR$(147)

```

```

15 DIM A(3)
20 INPUT A(1)
30 INPUT A(2)
40 INPUT A(3)
50 PRINT
60 PRINT
70 PRINT A(3), A(2), A(1)
80 END

```

Program 1 Reversing the order of a list

Typical run

```

RUN
? 29
? 32
? -17
-17 32 29
READY.

```

☐ Program 1.

We have done as requested in the question, but have not made a significant advance in programming technique since we could have done the job with the techniques of earlier units simply by calling the variables P, Q and R and outputting them as R, Q and P. To do the job better we need to count the list as it is inputted so that we can use the counter in reverse order when we output the list. The next example adds this refinement.

Counting a list

Example 3

Write a program to input five numbers into a list, to display the items of the list and its index in the form of a table, and then output the elements of the list in reverse order.

Solution

As listed in the question, there are three main parts to the solution and we can display these in flowchart form as in Figure 3.

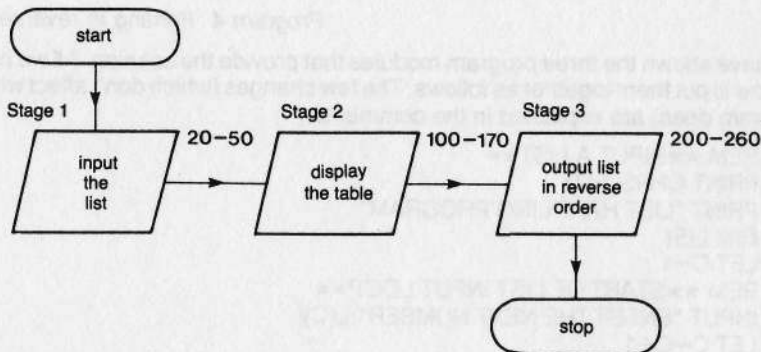


Figure 3 Stages in solving Example 3

Stage 1 We use the variable C to count the elements of the list on input, and to act as an index for the L-list.

```

5  REM **INPUT A LIST**
10 PRINT CHR$(147)
15 DIM L(5)
20 LET C=1
25 REM **START OF LIST INPUT LOOP**
30 INPUT "ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER";L(C)
40 LET C=C+1
50 IF C<=5 THEN 25

```

Program 2 Counting a list on entry

Stage 2 The table will have the form you met in the answer to SAQ 1. A simple PRINT . . . , . . . will suffice to display the table.

```

100 REM **DISPLAY THE TABLE**
110 PRINT
120 PRINT
130 PRINT "INDEX ITEM"
140 LET C=1
145 REM **START OF TABLE PRINT LOOP**
150 PRINT C,L(C)
160 LET C=C+1
170 IF C<=5 THEN 145

```

} print the table

Program 3 Printing the list in input order

Stage 3 Now we make C count from 5 down to 1 in order to print the list in reverse order.

```

200 REM **OUTPUT LIST IN REVERSE**
210 PRINT
220 PRINT
230 LET C=5
235 REM **REVERSE PRINT LOOP**
240 PRINT L(C)
250 LET C=C-1
260 IF C<=1 THEN 240

```

} print list in reverse order

Program 4 Printing in reverse order

We have shown the three program modules that provide the solution. All we have to do now is put them together as follows. The few changes (which don't affect what the program does) are explained in the comments:

```

5  REM **INPUT A LIST**
10 PRINT CHR$(147)
12 PRINT "LIST HANDLING PROGRAM"
15 DIM L(5)
20 LET C=1
25 REM **START OF LIST INPUT LOOP**
30 INPUT "ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER";L(C)
40 LET C=C+1
50 IF C<=5 THEN 25
60 REM ****

```

```

70 REM *****
100 REM **DISPLAY THE TABLE**
110 PRINT
120 PRINT
130 PRINT "INDEX", "ITEM"
140 LET D=1
145 REM **START OF TABLE PRINT LOOP**
150 PRINT D,L(D)
160 LET D=D+1
170 IF D<=5 THEN 145
180 REM *****
190 REM *****
200 REM **OUTPUT LIST IN REVERSE**
210 PRINT
220 PRINT
230 LET E=5
235 REM **REVERSE PRINT LOOP**
240 PRINT L(E)
250 LET E=E-1
260 IF E>=1 THEN 235
270 END

```

REM statements to help reader see the division in the program.

We've used D as an index to remind you that its name doesn't matter — only its value

More REM's

And we've used E here
END added.

Program 5 The full reverse list program

```

RUN
LIST HANDLING PROGRAM
ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER? -8
ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER? 15
ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER? 23
ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER? -4
ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER? 19

```

INDEX	ITEM
1	-8
2	15
3	23
4	-4
5	19
19	
-4	
23	
15	
-8	

READY.

K Program 5.

To solve the problem in Example 3 we've done quite a bit of programming but the program only works for a list of five numbers. A small reward for a great effort! But if we change statements 20–50 which counted the five items, we can make the program accept any number of items so long as we know the number before inputting.

But we need to make DIM M\$ depend on the number of items we are inputting. Because the counter C will go up to N+1 (watch line 50), DIM M\$ needs to be N+1.

```

10 REM **INPUT A LIST OF ITEMS**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 INPUT "HOW MANY ITEMS IN THE LIST";N] — any number of items can
25 DIM M$(N+1) — now be entered into the
30 LET C=1 — list M$(C)
35 REM **START OF LIST INPUT LOOP**
40 INPUT "ENTER THE NEXT ITEM ";M$(C)
50 LET C=C+1
60 IF C <= N THEN 35

```

Program 6

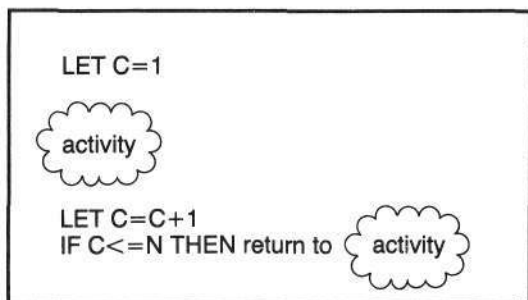
To be able to input any number of items of data into individual store locations with just half a dozen statements represents a significant improvement in programming technique. But, of course, we are never satisfied! Why should we bother to count the items, especially if the list is long, when we can get the computer to do it for us? The next exercise asks you to do this.

Exercise 1

Write a BASIC program to (a) input a list of numbers of unknown length; terminate the list with the dummy '-9999'. Call the list P(C) and assume that the list will be 30 or less items. So DIM P (31) will declare the list. Check your answer.
 (b) Now modify your program to output those items whose index is odd.

4.5 The FOR . . . NEXT . . . loop

As we have said (repeatedly!) a computer is good at lots of repetitive operations. In order to control these operations we usually have to count them. Since we introduced the idea of counting in Unit 2, we have used the following sequence of statements several times.



Program 7

These repetitive operations are so important in programming that special provision is made for them. In BASIC this is done by means of the FOR . . . NEXT . . . facility.

The sequence in Program 7 has three elements:

LET C = 1 which starts the count

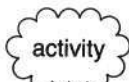
LET C=C+1 which defines the incremental step (1 in this case; 2 in line 270 of the answer to Exercise 1)

C<=N which stops the counting process

The same features occur in the FOR . . . NEXT . . . loop where the above sequence becomes:

start finish increment

FOR C=1 TO N STEP (1)



NEXT C

Program 8

Notice that NEXT C returns control to the line FOR C=1 TO N STEP (1) without you having to put the line number of FOR C . . . in the NEXT C statement.

Arrays and FOR . . . NEXT loops were made for each other. Together they form possibly the most potent facility of the BASIC language. Let's look in detail at how these loops work, and then repeat some of our earlier routines with lists using this new facility.

Examples of FOR . . . NEXT loops in action

(a)
 10 FOR I=4 TO 10 STEP (2)
 20 PRINT I
 30 NEXT I
 RUN
 4
 6
 8
 10
 READY.

(c)
 10 FOR J=-3 TO 10 STEP (3)
 20 PRINT J
 30 NEXT I
 RUN
 -3
 0
 3
 6
 9
 READY.

(b)
 10 FOR K=11 TO 4 STEP (-2)
 20 PRINT K
 30 NEXT K
 RUN
 11
 9
 7
 5
 READY.

(d)
 10 FOR L=4 TO -5 STEP (-2)
 20 PRINT L
 30 NEXT L
 RUN
 4
 2
 0
 -2
 -4
 READY.

Programs 9-12

Commdore 64 BASIC does not insist upon brackets around the STEP number.

SAQ 2

Write out the lists of numbers printed out by the following loops.

(a)
 10 FOR E=1 TO 9 STEP(2)
 20 PRINT E
 30 NEXT E

(b)
 10 FOR F=-30 TO -18 STEP(3)
 20 PRINT F
 30 NEXT F

```
(c)
10 FOR G=8 TO -4 STEP(-5)
20 PRINT G
30 NEXT G
```

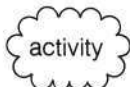
```
(d)
10 FOR H=-2 TO -11 STEP(-4)
20 PRINT H
30 NEXT H
```

Programs 13-16

FOR...NEXT...with STEP (1)

The above examples and SAQ's had steps of 2, 3, -2, -4, and -5. Quite often, however, we simply want to use a step of 1. When that is the case, you can omit STEP(1) from the statement. Thus

```
FOR C=1 TO N
```



```
NEXT C
```

Program 17

is taken by the computer to mean a step of 1.

Input/output routines with FOR...NEXT

Routines are made easier by the FOR...NEXT facility. For example we can rewrite Program 5 using these loops. Notice that at lines 20 and 150 we require a step of 1 so STEP(1) has been omitted.

Comparison with Program 5

```

5  REM **INPUT A LIST OF 5 NAMES**
10 PRINT CHR$(147)
12 PRINT "LIST HANDLING PROGRAM**"
15 DIM L$(5)
20 FOR C=1 TO 5
25 REM **START OF LIST INPUT LOOP**
30 INPUT "ENTER THE NEXT NAME ";L$(C)
40 NEXT C
50 REM *****
60 REM *****
100 REM **DISPLAY THE TABLE**
110 PRINT
120 PRINT
130 PRINT "INDEX", "NAME"
140 PRINT
145 REM **START OF TABLE PRINT LOOP
150 FOR D=1 TO 5
160 PRINT D,L$(D)
170 NEXT D
180 REM *****
190 REM *****
200 REM **OUTPUT LIST IN REVERSE ORDER**
210 PRINT
220 PRINT
225 REM **REVERSE PRINT LOOP**
230 FOR E=5 TO 1 STEP -1
240 PRINT E,L$(E)
250 NEXT E
280 END
```

} Replaces lines 20-50

} Replaces lines 140-170

} Replaces lines 230-260

Program 18 Using FOR...NEXT... to reverse a list


```

RUN
LIST HANDLING PROGRAM
ENTER THE NEXT NAME? DICKENS
ENTER THE NEXT NAME? HARDY
ENTER THE NEXT NAME? SHOW
ENTER THE NEXT NAME? AUSTEN
ENTER THE NEXT NAME? ORWELL

```

```

INDEX      NAME
1          DICKENS
2          HARDY
3          SNOW
4          AUSTEN
5          ORWELL

5          ORWELL
4          AUSTEN
3          SNOW
2          HARDY
1          DICKENS
READY.

```

K Program 18.

General FOR. . . NEXT loop

The FOR. . . NEXT loop can be expressed in quite general terms as

```
FOR I = S TO F STEP (J)
```



```
NEXT I
```

providing that S, F and J are given 'reasonable' values before the loop is executed. Unreasonable values would be something like

S=2, F=10, and STEP(-3)

since you can't get from 2 to 10 in steps of -3, in the normal course of events.

Exercise 2

In Exercise 2 of Unit 2 you wrote a program (Program 19) to calculate the yield on an investment for a period of years to be specified. Re-write lines 40-90 of the program using a FOR. . . NEXT loop.

Exercise 3

If you are mathematically inquisitive you might like to try the following which demonstrates the potential of the FOR. . . NEXT loop. Write a program to tabulate the squares and cubes of the odd integers from 1 to 21 inclusive.

Output display

We always aim at a clear presentation of output data on the screen or printer. The FOR. . . NEXT facility is used widely in presenting output routines.

Use to skip lines. As you saw in the layout of letters in Unit 3 it is useful to 'print' blank lines. The following routine does this for you.

```

10 REM **FOR...NEXT**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 REM **TO SKIP LINES IN A PRINT ROUTINE**
30 PRINT "HELLO"
35 REM **START OF LOOP**
40 FOR H=1 TO 10 ]----- instruction to print 10 blank lines
50 PRINT
60 NEXT H
70 PRINT "HELLO FROM 11 LINES BELOW"
80 END

```

Program 19

```

RUN
HELLO

```

HELLO FROM 11 LINES BELOW

Program 19.

Drawing a line. We may wish to print lines across the screen or page, e.g. to separate blocks of data or just to underline. The following routine does this.

```

10 REM **FOR...NEXT**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 REM **TO DRAW LINES**
25 REM **START OF LOOP**
30 FOR M=1 TO 40
40 PRINT "★";
50 NEXT M
60 PRINT
90 END

```

Program 20

```

RUN

```

```

READY.

```

SAQ 3

Why does line 40 in Program 20 have ; at the end of the line? What happens if line 40 is 40 PRINT "★"?

Program 20.

Loops in flowcharts

Loops are so important that they have a special flowchart symbol of their own:

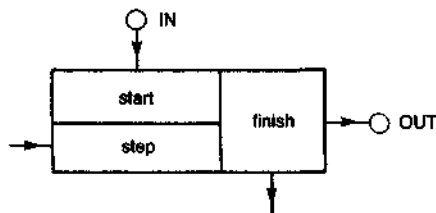


Figure 4a Flowchart symbol for a FOR...NEXT... loop

The floating ends are the connections to the activity:

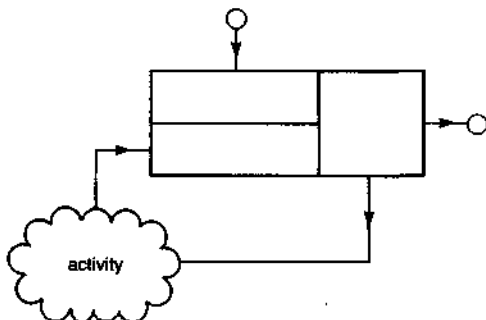


Figure 4b Flowchart symbol's relationship to activity

4.6 Nested loops

Program 20 drew a line of 40 asterisks. We can re-write the program so that we can specify in line 30 a number of asterisks and so vary the length of the line. So with the program:

```

10 REM **LINES OF DIFFERENT LENGTH**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 LET N=1  _____ number to go in line 30
30 FOR M=1 TO N
40 PRINT "*";
50 NEXT M
60 PRINT
70 END

```

Program 21

we get

```

RUN
*
READY.

```

To vary the line length we simply key in

```

20 LET N=required length

```

and key run;

```
20 LET N=2
```

```
RUN
```

```
★★
```

```
READY.
```

```
20 LET N=3
```

```
RUN
```

```
★★★
```

```
READY.
```

```
20 LET N=4
```

```
RUN
```

```
★★★★
```

```
READY.
```

```
20 LET N=8
```

```
RUN
```

```
★★★★★★★
```

```
READY.
```

```
20 LET N=16
```

```
RUN
```

```
★★★★★★★★★★★★★★
```

```
READY.
```

```
20 LET N=32
```

```
RUN
```

```
★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★★
```

```
READY.
```

☐ Program 21.

Nested FOR. . . NEXT loops

You have seen in Program 21 how you can control the effect of the FOR. . . NEXT loop of lines 30–50 by changing the value of N. We hope by now that the ‘obvious’ question springs to your mind: ‘Why not control the value of N by using another FOR. . . NEXT loop?’ The following program does just that. The M-loop of lines 30–50 is itself controlled by the N-loop of lines 20–70. The M-loop is said to be ‘nested’ within the N-loop.

```
10 REM **NESTED FOR. . . NEXT LOOPS**  
12 PRINT CHR$(147)  
15 REM **START OF OUTER LOOP**  
20 FOR N=1 TO 16
```



```

70 NEXT N
75 REM **END OF OUTER LOOP**
80 END

```

RUN

```

**           P= 2
*****      P= 4
*****      P= 8
*****      P=16
*****      P=32
READY.

```

Program 23.

Exercise 4

Write a program using nested loops to print out the 7, 8 and 9 multiplication tables.

Exercise 5

Write a program using nested loops to print out rectangles of asterisks of dimensions to be chosen by the user.

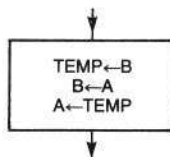
4.7 Interchanging

We considered the problem of finding the smaller of 2 numbers in Unit 2, and the smallest of 3 in Unit 3. In this Unit we have done exercises on interchanging items of a list, in preparation for writing an interchange program.

We have been comparing the items of a list with that at position 1, and interchanging if the item in the list is smaller than that at position 1. When you did this in SAQ 1, you did it manually and we have not yet looked at the problems of writing a program to perform the interchange. We can't just say

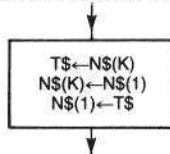
Copy A into B and then B into A

since the first transaction 'copy A into B' overwrites and destroys what's in B, giving us copies of A in A and in B. Instead we have to put the contents of B away in some safe temporary store before we overwrite B with A. We can show the process diagrammatically:



Where \leftarrow means place the number in the right hand store into the left hand store.

Suppose, for example, you want to sort a list of names N\$-list and you want to interchange the first name, N\$(1) with some other name N\$(K) at position K. This can be done using a temporary store location T\$:



Remember that it is the contents of $N\$(1)$ and $N\$(K)$ that are being swapped. Suppose $N\$(1)=FRED$ and $N\$(K)=JIM$ then this is what is happening:

	Store locations		
	$N\$(1)$	$N\$(K)$	$T\$\$
start	FRED	JIM	
next stage	FRED	JIM	JIM
next stage	FRED	FRED	JIM
end	JIM	FRED	JIM

(The fact that $T\$\$ still has JIM in it doesn't matter: we have achieved the object which is to swap the locations of FRED and JIM).

Flowchart for name sort

In the number sort (SAQ 1) we wanted to put the lowest number at the top of the list. So we test each name in turn against the one currently at the top of the list and interchange only if the name under test comes before the one at the top of the list. A flowchart for this is:

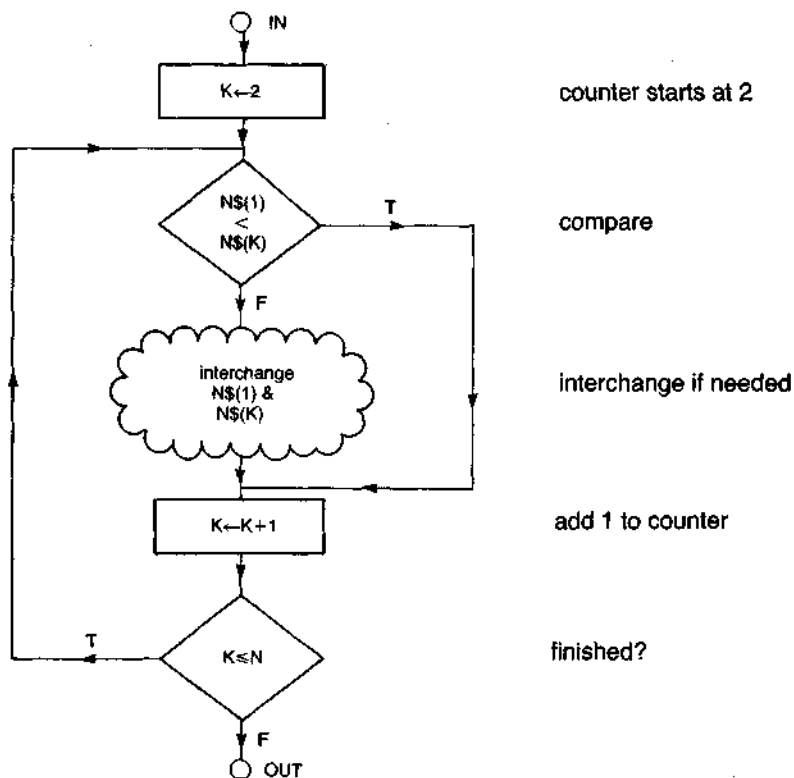


Figure 5a Flowchart for interchange

Or, if we want to use the special flowchart symbol for FOR...NEXT..., it would look like:

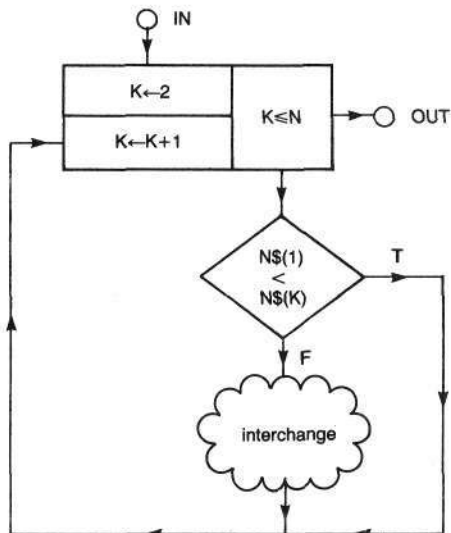


Figure 5b Flowchart for interchange with FOR...NEXT... symbol

This new routine can now be used to construct a program.

Example 4

Write a program to enter a list of names of unknown length into an array, print out this list with index in input order. By means of the interchange routine place the name of lowest alphabetic value in position 1 in the list, and output the new list.

Solution

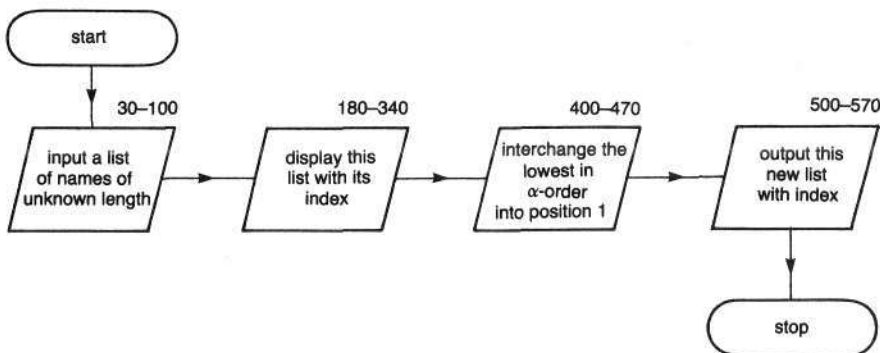


Figure 6 Flowchart for Example 4

Interchange program

```
10 REM **FIRST IN ALPHA-ORDER**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT "FIRST ITEM IN ALPHA-ORDER"
25 DIM NS$(30)
30 PRINT "ENTER A LIST OF NAMES ONE BY ONE"
40 PRINT "END THE LIST WITH ZZZZ"
50 PRINT
60 LET I=1
65 REM **INPUTTING LIST**
70 INPUT "NEXT NAME ";NS$(I)
80 IF NS$(I)="ZZZZ" THEN 190
90 LET I=I+1
100 GOTO 65
180 REM *****
190 REM **WE DON'T WANT ZZZZ IN OUR LIST, SO**
200 LET N=I-1
210 REM *****
300 PRINT
310 PRINT "INDEX", "ITEM"
315 REM **START OF PRINT LOOP**
320 FOR J=1 TO N
330 PRINT J,NS$(J)
340 NEXT J
400 REM *****
410 REM **INTERCHANGE ROUTINE**
420 FOR K=2 TO N
430 IF NS$(1)<NS$(K) THEN 465
440 LET TS=NS$(K)
450 LET NS$(K)=NS$(1)
460 LET NS$(1)=TS
465 REM **JUMP TO HERE IF IN ORDER**
470 NEXT K
500 REM *****
505 REM **OUTPUT INTERCHANGED LIST**
510 PRINT
520 PRINT "LIST AFTER INTERCHANGE"
530 PRINT
540 PRINT "INDEX", "ITEM"
550 FOR L=1 TO N
560 PRINT L,NS$(L)
570 NEXT L
580 END
```

inputting list

finding number of names entered

print list

interchange

print interchanged order

Program 24 Finding the first item in alphabetical order

Interchange program runs

```
RUN
FIRST ITEM IN ALPHA-ORDER
ENTER A LIST OF NAMES ONE BY ONE
END THE LIST WITH ZZZZ
```

NEXT NAME? JONES
 NEXT NAME? PRICE
 NEXT NAME? DAVIES
 NEXT NAME? EVANS
 NEXT NAME? ZZZZ

INDEX	ITEM
1	JONES
2	PRICE
3	DAVIES
4	EVANS

LIST AFTER INTERCHANGE

INDEX	ITEM
1	DAVIES
2	PRICE
3	JONES
4	EVANS

READY.

If a print routine is inserted in to the interchange procedure as below (lines 470-478), then we can look at the effect of each pass round the loop.

```

400 REM *****
410 REM **INTERCHANGE ROUTINE**
420 FOR K=2 TO N
430 IF N$(1)<N$(K) THEN 465
440 LET T$=N$(K)
450 LET N$(K)=N$(1)
460 LET N$(1)=T$
465 REM **JUMP TO HERE IF IN ORDER**
470 NEXT K
472 FOR L=1 TO N
474 PRINT N$(L); " ";
476 NEXT L
478 PRINT
500 REM *****
505 REM **OUTPUT INTERCHANGED LIST**
510 PRINT
520 PRINT "LIST AFTER INTERCHANGE"
530 PRINT
540 PRINT "INDEX", "ITEM"
550 FOR L=1 TO N
560 PRINT L, N$(L)
570 NEXT L
580 END
  
```

} print routine to observe pass round the loop

Assignment 4

1. It will probably have occurred to you by now that, having placed the item of lowest value into position 1, we could repeat the procedure by placing the item of lowest value in the remainder of the list into position 2, and so on for the rest of the list. The sort of the complete list in this way demands nested FOR... NEXT... loops.

2. Input a file of names and associated telephone numbers into two lists N\$(I) and T\$(I) respectively. Use the index I to search through the file to find a particular name, and if found then to output the associated telephone number.

Modify Program 24 to sort a complete list into alphabetical order.

Objectives of Unit 4

Now that you have completed this Unit, check that you are able to write simple programs using:

List store location names

to input lists

to print lists

Counters to count the number of items in a list.

FOR. . . NEXT. . . loops

to print a list

to input a list

to print ★ layouts

Nested loops

to print ★ layouts

Interchange routine

Answers to SAQ's and Exercises

SAQ 1

The six stages of the procedure are shown here in the following program run:

```
RUN
ENTER A LIST OF NAMES ONE BY ONE
END THE LIST WITH ZZZZ
```

```
NEXT NAME? 6
NEXT NAME? 8
NEXT NAME? 4
NEXT NAME? 7
NEXT NAME? 3
NEXT NAME? 9
NEXT NAME? 1
NEXT NAME? ZZZZ
```

INDEX	ITEM
1	6
2	8
3	4
4	7
5	3
6	9
7	1

```

6 8 4 7 3 9 1
4 8 6 7 3 9 1
4 8 6 7 3 9 1
3 8 6 7 4 9 1
3 8 6 7 4 9 1
1 8 6 7 4 9 3

```

LIST AFTER INTERCHANGE

INDEX	ITEM
1	1
2	8
3	6
4	7
5	4
6	9
7	3

READY.

Exercise 1

Notice that we've used lots of REM statements to tell you how the program works.

```

5  DIM P(31)
10 REM **A LIST OF NUMBERS OF UNKNOWN LENGTH**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
17 PRINT "NUMBER LIST PROGRAM"
20 PRINT "ENTER THE ELEMENTS OF THE LIST"
22 PRINT "ITEM BY ITEM AS REQUESTED"
24 PRINT "END THE LIST WITH THE DUMMY '-9999'"
26 PRINT
30 LET C=1
35 REM **START OF INPUT SEQUENCE**
40 INPUT "ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER";P(C)
50 IF P(C)=-9999 THEN 90
60 LET C=C+1
70 GOTO 35
80 REM *******
90 REM **REMEMBER 'C' COUNTED -9999 AS AN ITEM**
100 LET N=C-1
110 REM *******
200 REM **OUTPUT THE ITEMS WHOSE INDEX IS ODD**
210 REM **3=1+2 .. 5=3+2 .. 7=5+2 .. ETC ...**
220 LET C=1
230 PRINT
240 PRINT
250 PRINT "ODD INDEX", "ITEM"
255 REM **OUTPUT SEQUENCE**
260 PRINT C,P(C)
270 LET C=C+2
280 IF C<=N THEN 255
290 END

```

Input sequence
 Taking correct total from counter
 Output sequence

Program 25

RUN
 NUMBER LIST PROGRAM
 ENTER THE ELEMENTS OF THE LIST
 ITEM BY ITEM AS REQUESTED
 END THE LIST WITH THE DUMMY "--9999"

ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER? 42
 ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER? -12
 ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER? 37
 ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER? 92
 ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER? 11
 ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER? -3
 ENTER THE NEXT NUMBER? -9999

ODD INDEX ITEM

1 42
 3 37
 5 11

READY.

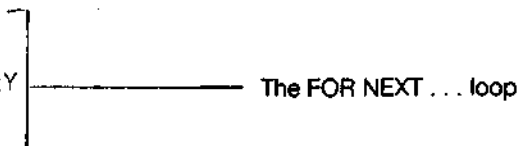
SAQ 2

- (a) 1,3,5,7,9. (c) 8,3,-2.
 (b) -30,-27,-24,-21,-18. (d) -2,-6,-10.

Exercise 2

```

10 REM **COMPOUND INTEREST**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
17 PRINT "BANK ACCOUNT INTEREST"
20 PRINT "ENTER YEARS, DEPOSIT AND % INTEREST"
30 INPUT N,D,P
35 REM *****
40 FOR C=1 TO N
50 LET Y=(P*D)/100
60 PRINT "YEAR ";C;"YIELD ";Y
70 LET D=D+Y
80 NEXT C
90 REM *****
100 END
  
```



The FOR NEXT ... loop

Program 26

RUN
 BANK ACCOUNT INTEREST
 ENTER YEARS, DEPOSIT AND % INTEREST

?5,500,11.25

YEAR	1	YIELD	£56.25
YEAR	2	YIELD	£62.578125
YEAR	3	YIELD	£69.6181641
YEAR	4	YIELD	£77.4502075
YEAR	5	YIELD	£86.1633559

READY.

Exercise 3

```

10 REM ***SQUARES AND CUBES**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT "NUMBER", "SQUARE", "CUBE"
30 FOR I=1 TO 21 STEP 2
40 LET S=I*I
50 LET C=I*I*I
60 PRINT I,S,C
70 NEXT I
80 END
RUN

```

Program 27

NUMBER	SQUARE	CUBE
1	1	1
3	9	27
5	25	125
7	49	343
9	81	729
11	121	1331
13	169	2197
15	225	3375
17	289	4913
19	361	6859
21	441	9261

READY.

SAQ 3

; suppresses the print return so that the print head stops after printing *. Thus the next * will be printed on the same line. Without ; the asterisks would be printed in a column 40 print lines deep.

Exercise 4

```

10 REM ***MULTIPLICATION TABLES**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 PRINT "MULTIPLICATION TABLE"
40 FOR T=7 TO 9
50 FOR K=1 TO 12
60 LET P=K*T
70 PRINT K;"TIMES ";T;"=" ;P
80 NEXT K
90 PRINT
100 NEXT T
110 END
RUN

```

Program 28

```

MULTIPLICATION TABLE
1 TIMES 7 = 7
2 TIMES 7 = 14
3 TIMES 7 = 21
4 TIMES 7 = 28
5 TIMES 7 = 35
6 TIMES 7 = 42
7 TIMES 7 = 49
8 TIMES 7 = 56
9 TIMES 7 = 63

```

10 TIMES 7 = 70
11 TIMES 7 = 77
12 TIMES 7 = 84

1 TIMES 8 = 8
2 TIMES 8 = 16
3 TIMES 8 = 24
4 TIMES 8 = 32
5 TIMES 8 = 40
6 TIMES 8 = 48
7 TIMES 8 = 56
8 TIMES 8 = 64
9 TIMES 8 = 72
10 TIMES 8 = 80
11 TIMES 8 = 88
12 TIMES 8 = 96

We still have a lot to learn
about tabulation

1 TIMES 9 = 9
2 TIMES 9 = 18
3 TIMES 9 = 27
4 TIMES 9 = 36
5 TIMES 9 = 45
6 TIMES 9 = 54
7 TIMES 9 = 63
8 TIMES 9 = 72
9 TIMES 9 = 81
10 TIMES 9 = 90
11 TIMES 9 = 99
12 TIMES 9 = 108

READY.

Exercise 5

```
5  REM **RECTANGLE**
7  PRINT CHR$(1477)
10 INPUT "LENGTH OF RECTANGLE?" L
20 INPUT "WIDTH OF RECTANGLE?" W
30 FOR I=1 TO W
40 FOR J=1 TO L
50 PRINT "*";
60 NEXT J
70 PRINT
80 NEXT I
90 END
```

Program 29

UNIT 5

An end to strings and PRINT

5.1	Introduction	120
5.2	Length of a string of characters	120
5.3	Frequency tables	121
5.4	Frequency diagrams	124
5.5	Tabulation	127
5.6	Cutting up strings	130
5.7	VAL	136
5.8	TAB footnote: control characters	140
	Assignment 5	140
	Objectives of Unit 5	141
	Answers to SAQ's and Exercises	141

5.1 Introduction

The earlier units were concerned with introducing topics; new ideas came thick and fast. This Unit is mainly concerned with strings, but you will meet the TAB statement which is an important addition to your printing repertoire. The title of this Unit is a slight exaggeration, but by the end of this Unit you will have met most of the main string and print functions of the BASIC language.

5.2 Length of a string of characters

We asked the question 'How long is a piece of string?' in Unit 3. At the time it may have seemed a rather facetious question, but the number of characters contained in a particular string storage location is often a vital piece of information. This is especially so if we are trying to use the memory allocation of a particular computer as efficiently as possible.

In BASIC the operation $LEN(A\$)$ gives the length of $A\$$ as a number of characters. Thus:

If $A\$ = \text{"FRED"}$ then $LEN(A\$) = 4$

If $B\$ = \text{"A"}$ then $LEN(B\$) = 1$

SAQ 1

What are the values of the following:

(a) $LEN(C\$)$ where $C\$ = \text{"ANN"}$

(c) $LEN(E\$)$ where $E\$ = \text{"72"}$

(b) $LEN(D\$)$ where $D\$ = \text{"A"}$

(d) $LEN(F\$)$ where $F\$ = \text{"CAT 123"}$

Example 1

Write a BASIC program to input a list of words, ending with ZZZZ, and to print out the length of each word.

Solution

We have arranged the program to read in the words from a DATA statement in order to reduce the inputting time needed. Each word read from DATA is held in $W\$$ (line 100) and its length stored in L (line 120). Then the result is printed out at line 140.

```
10 REM **LENGTH OF A WORD**
20 REM ****
30 REM **READ WORDS FROM A DATA LIST ONE BY ONE
40 REM AND OUTPUT THEIR LENGTHS**
50 PRINT CHR$(147)
90 REM **START OF READING LOOP**
100 READ W$
110 IF W$="ZZZZ" THEN 190
120 LET L=LEN(W$)
130 PRINT
140 PRINT W$;" HAS ";L;" LETTER(S)"
150 GOTO 90
190 REM **ALL DONE**
200 END
910 DATA DEVISE,AN,ALGORITHM,AND,WRITE,A,BASIC,PROGRAM
920 DATA ZZZZ
```

READ, LEN, PRINT cycle

Program 1 Measuring word lengths

RUN

DEVISE HAS 6 LETTER(S)

AN HAS 2 LETTER(S)

ALGORITHM HAS 9 LETTER(S)

AND HAS 3 LETTER(S)

WRITE HAS 5 LETTER(S)

A HAS 1 LETTER(S)

BASIC HAS 5 LETTER(S)

PROGRAM HAS 9 LETTER(S)

READY.

Program 1.

5.3 Frequency tables

Measuring the frequency with which something occurs is commonly needed in handling numerical information. For example, a knowledge of the frequency with which certain letters occur in normal language usage is an important factor in code-breaking activities. In order to measure frequencies it is useful to be able to use the simple technique used in statistical analysis of tally marks. This first paper and pencil example introduces this.

Tally marks

Example 2

Find the frequency with which each vowel occurs in the words in the following DATA statements.

900 DATA THE, HORSE, STOOD, STILL, TILL, HE, HAD, FINISHED, THE, HYMN

910 DATA WHICH, JUDE, REPEATED, UNDER, THE, SWAY, OF, A,
POLYTHEISTIC

920 DATA FANCY, THAT, HE, WOULD, NEVER, HAVE, THOUGHT, OF,
HUMOURING

930 DATA IN, BROAD, DAYLIGHT, ZZZZ

Solution

There are two ways to approach the problem.

- Go through crossing out and counting up all the A's, and then through again counting the number of E's, etc. This would involve 5 passes through the data for fairly sparse information (i.e. for a low hit-rate);
- Draw up a table as below and take each vowel in sequence:

THÉ: put a tally mark in the E row;

HÓRSE: put a mark in the O row, followed by another in the E row;

STÓÓD: put two more marks in the O row.

Vowel	Count				Total count or frequency
A	1111	1111			9
E	1111	1111	1111	1	16
I	1111	1111			10
O	1111	1111			10
U	1111	1			6

900 DATA THÉ, HÓRSÉ, STÓOD, STÍLL, TÍLL, HÉ, HÁD, FÍNISHÉD, THÉ, HYMN
 910 DATA WHICH, JÚDÉ, RÉPÉATED, ÚNDÉR, THÉ, SWAY, ÓF, Á, PÓLYTHÉÍSTIC
 920 DATA FÁNCY, THÁT, HÉ, WÓULD, NÉVÉR, HÁVÉ, THÓUGHT, ÓF, HÚMÓURÍNG
 930 DATA ÍN, BRÓAD, DÁYLÍGH, ZZZZ

Figure 1 Completed tally count

SAQ 2

Use the tally method to draw up a frequency table of the lengths of words for the data in Example 2.

Getting the computer to count

Having found a paper and pencil method of counting frequencies, we now need a method of getting the computer to do the counting of a list. The power of lists is derived from an apt use of the index. In question 2 of Assignment 4 we saw how the items of two lists of data (name and telephone number lists) were linked by a common index. The 3rd member of the number-list was the telephone number for the 3rd name in the name-list, etc. Generally the l -th member of the name-list is linked to the l -th member of number-list.

Suppose we want to count the number of times the digits 0, 1, 2, . . . 9 occur in a sequence. We can use 10 counters:

$C(0), C(1), C(2) \dots C(9)$

each of which will be zero at the start. To count the digits in 473808 we take the first digit in the sequence: 4. 1 is added to $C(4)$ and so on:

Digits entered	Counters after entry									
	$C(0)$	$C(1)$	$C(2)$	$C(3)$	$C(4)$	$C(5)$	$C(6)$	$C(7)$	$C(8)$	$C(9)$
start	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
7	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0
3	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0
8	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0
0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0
8	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	2	0

So the idea is that when I is entered at the key-board, increment C(I) by 1. This can be achieved in just two BASIC statements.

```
120 INPUT I
140 LET C(I)=C(I)+1
```

} ————— A list counter

SAQ 3

The sequence

```
10 INPUT N
20 LET C(N)=C(N)+1
```

is used to count the number of 0's, 1's, 2's, etc. in the following input data: 3, 1, 0, 5, 9, 9, 6, 6, 6, 0, 4, 4, 2, 4, 1, 2, 1, 3, 0, 2, 1, 3. What are the values of the following:

- C(3) after 3 numbers have been inputted.
- C(9) after 12 numbers have been inputted.
- C(1) after all the numbers have been inputted.
- C(0) after all the numbers have been inputted.

We will now use this method of counting a list in an example.

Example 3

Write a program to input a sequence of single digits and to output the frequency with which each digit occurs.

Solution

A digit is one of the set of 10 numbers 0, 1, 2, 3 . . . 9. We will enter these one by one, with the sequence being terminated by -9999. So far, very routine!

The counting list will have 10 counters:

C(0), C(1), C(2) . . . C(9)

The program to solve the complete problem has two parts. (i) The input and increment routine incorporates the two statements 120 and 140 discussed above. (ii) The output routine is driven by a FOR. . . NEXT loop, with index J running from 0 to 9.

```
10 REM ***COUNT THE NUMBER OF TIMES EACH DIGIT IS ENTERED**
20 REM ***AND STORE IN A COUNT-LIST C(I)**
30 REM *****
35 PRINT CHR$(147)
40 DIM C(10)
90 PRINT "LIST COUNTER"
100 PRINT "ENTER A SERIES OF INDIVIDUAL DIGITS"
110 PRINT "ENDING THE LIST WITH -9999"
120 INPUT "NEXT DIGIT" I
130 IF I=-9999 THEN 190
140 LET C(I)=C(I)+1
150 GOTO 120
190 REM ***PRINT TITLES**
200 PRINT
210 PRINT "DIGIT COUNT"
220 PRINT
230 FOR J=0 TO 9
240 PRINT J, C(J)
250 NEXT J
260 END
```

} ————— input and counting routine

} ————— printing table

Program 2 Counting with a list counter C(I)

Typical output

(After entering 3, 7, 6, 4, 9, 1, 4, 9, 2, 7, 8, 0, 1, 5, 2, 7, -9999.)

DIGIT	COUNT
Ø	1
1	2
2	2
3	1
4	2
5	1
6	1
7	3
8	1
9	2

READY.

K Program 2.

Frequency table for string lengths

We have written two programs so far in this Unit: the first to find the lengths of strings, and the second to build up a frequency table.

In the following exercise we want you to combine these two ideas to build up a frequency table of lengths of words. If you wish you can use the words in the DATA statements already used in Example 2. Assume that the words will not be longer than 15 characters, so the length-list will have elements:

L(1), L(2), L(3) . . . L(15).

Exercise 1

Write a program to read in a set of words and to display a frequency table of their lengths.

5.4 Frequency diagrams

Frequency diagram for number of vowels

The picture of tally marks in Figure 1 makes a more immediate impact on us and somehow gives us more information about the distribution of frequencies of the vowels than just the column of figures. So why not get the computer to print a picture for us? You saw how to print rows of asterisks in Unit 4 by driving the print head across the page (or screen) with a FOR. . . NEXT loop of variable range.

SAQ 4

What will appear on the screen as a result of the following program?

```
10 READ A
20 FOR I=1 TO A
30 PRINT "★";
40 NEXT I
```

```

45 PRINT
50 GOTO 10
100 DATA 2, 5, 7, 8, 3, 1

```

Program 3

We can do the same thing using the frequencies from Figure 1 to determine the range and thus the number of asterisks printed across the page. This will generate a picture of the distribution.

Example 4

Write a program to print out a frequency diagram for the distribution of vowels given in Example 2.

Solution

Notice that this program draws the diagram from the frequencies we have already calculated. We have stored these frequencies in the DATA statement in line 900.

We read the frequencies (lines 50 to 80) with a counter F(K) where F(1) is the number of a's, F(2) the number of e's, etc.

Then we print asterisks across the page according to the value of F(K) (lines 220 to 250).

```

10 REM **FREQUENCY DISTRIBUTION**
20 REM **PREPARATION PICTURE*****
25 REM **FREQUENCY-LIST IS F(K)**
30 PRINT CHR$(147)
35 DIM F(6)
40 LET K=1
45 REM **START OF READ LOOP**
50 READ F(K)
60 IF F(K)=-9999 THEN 110
70 LET K=K+1
80 GOTO 50
90 REM *****
100 REM **DON'T ADD -9999 TO LIST**
110 LET N=K-1
120 REM *****
200 REM **PRINT ROUTINE**
210 PRINT
220 FOR X=1 TO N
230 FOR Y=1 TO F(X)
240 PRINT "*"
250 NEXT Y
260 PRINT
270 PRINT
280 NEXT X
300 REM *****
900 DATA 9,16,10,10,6,-9999

```

reading the frequencies
and storing them in F(1),
F(2) ...

printing * across the page

Program 4 Drawing a frequency distribution

RUN

★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

READY.

Program 4.

Frequency diagram for length of words

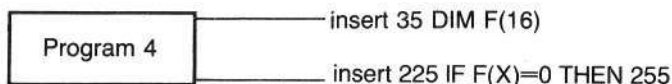
If we want to draw a diagram of the frequencies with which the word lengths occurred in SAQ 1, we need to modify Program 4. Two modifications are necessary:

First the frequency list contains more items. There are 15 frequencies (1 to 15) plus -9999, so that's 16 items and we add 35 DIM F(16) to Program 4.

Second the print routine at line 220 will run into problems when the frequency is zero. We can't drive the FOR . . . NEXT loop from 1 to 0! So we must prevent the program going on to the FOR . . . NEXT loop when the frequency is zero. To do this we add 225 IF F(X)=0 THEN 255

```
255 REM **JUMP TO HERE IF ZERO FREQUENCY**
```

So the program is



And of course, line 900 is now:

```
900 DATA 1, 5, 4, 6, 9, 0, 1, 3, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, -9999.
```

Delete line 270, to fit the whole display onto the screen.

A run of the modified Program 4 produces:

★
★ ★ ★ ★ ★
★ ★ ★ ★ ★
★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★
★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

★
★ ★ ★
★

★

—————▶————— print out ends about here!
READY.

Figure 2 Frequency diagram of modified Program 4

Program 4 (modified).

5.5 Tabulation

We've got the essential ingredients of a picture, but it is still far from being a meaningful diagram. It will help if we have the facility to move the print head across the page or screen to any pre-determined position. In typing this is called tabulation (to arrange in tabular or table-form). In BASIC the TAB function does this for us.

We take the same approach as we did in Unit 3, namely to write a snippet of program which explains itself – an approach well worth cultivating!

First, look at what happens if you number print positions across the screen:

```
50 PRINT"1234567890123456789012345678901234567890"
60 PRINT"A";TAB(5);"E";TAB(7);"I";TAB(19);"O";TAB(31);"U"
```

```
RUN
1234567890123456789012345678901234567890
A   E I           O           U
READY.
```

Program 5

You can see that TAB(5) printed E at the sixth position. Why? Because the machine counts print positions from position 0. This is demonstrated by Program 6 where the scale across the screen goes from 0:

```
50 PRINT"0123456789012345678901234567890123456789"
60 PRINT"A";TAB(5);"E";TAB(7);"I";TAB(19);"O";TAB(31);"U"
```

```
RUN
0123456789012345678901234567890123456789
A   E I           O           U
READY.
```

Program 6

Now TAB(5) goes to the position labelled 5 but it is still in the sixth position across the screen.

SAQ 5

Write a program to print COL 1, COL 2, COL 3 across the screen with COL 1 starting at position 0, COL 2 at position 10 and COL 3 at position 20.

Variable TAB and its effects

We can drive line 60 of the vowel print with a FOR...NEXT loop to produce an actual table.

```
50 FOR I=1 TO 7
60 PRINT"A";TAB(5);"E";TAB(7);"I";TAB(19);"O";TAB(31);"U"
70 NEXT I
```

Program 7

```

RUN
A  E  I           O           U
A  E  I           O           U
A  E  I           O           U
A  E  I           O           U
A  E  I           O           U
A  E  I           O           U
A  E  I           O           U

```

READY.

Here is another example which shows how we can drive TAB with a variable. If we use TAB(V) where V is a variable, we can drive the print head to different positions across the screen. The program

```

30 FOR A=1 TO 10
40 PRINT TAB(A);"HELLO"
50 NEXT A
60 END

```

Value of A in TAB(A) is determined by the loop variable A.

Program 8

produces:

```

RUN
HELLO
  HELLO
    HELLO
      HELLO
        HELLO
          HELLO
            HELLO
              HELLO
                HELLO
                  HELLO

```

READY.

We can go one step further and combine these two effects in one program:

```

50 FOR I=1 TO 7
60 PRINT TAB(0+I);"A";TAB(5+I);"E";TAB(7+I);"I";
65 PRINT TAB(19+I);"O";TAB(31+I);"U"
70 NEXT I
80 END

```

Program 9

```

RUN
A  E  I           O           U
  A  E  I         O  O         U  U
    A  E  I       O  O  O       U  U  U
      A  E  I     O  O  O  O     U  U  U  U
        A  E  I   O  O  O  O  O   U  U  U  U  U
          A  E  I O  O  O  O  O  O U  U  U  U  U

```

READY.

SAQ 6

Write a program segment to input three numbers of the user's choice which will

place the string "HEADING" at three different positions across the same output line.

TAB and the frequency diagram

We are now in a position to set out the frequency diagram of figure 2 in a more attractive manner.

The print routine of the modified Program 4 (lines 200 to 300) was:

```
200 REM **PRINT ROUTINE*****
210 PRINT
220 FOR X=1 TO N
225 IF F(X)=0 THEN 255
230 FOR Y=1 TO F(X)
240 PRINT "*"
250 NEXT Y
260 PRINT
270 PRINT
280 NEXT X
300 REM ***
```

Program 4 (modified)

We add:

line 212 to print column headings.

line 214 to print a rule across the screen.

line 216 to start the column divides (the rest of the divides we printed by the following loop).

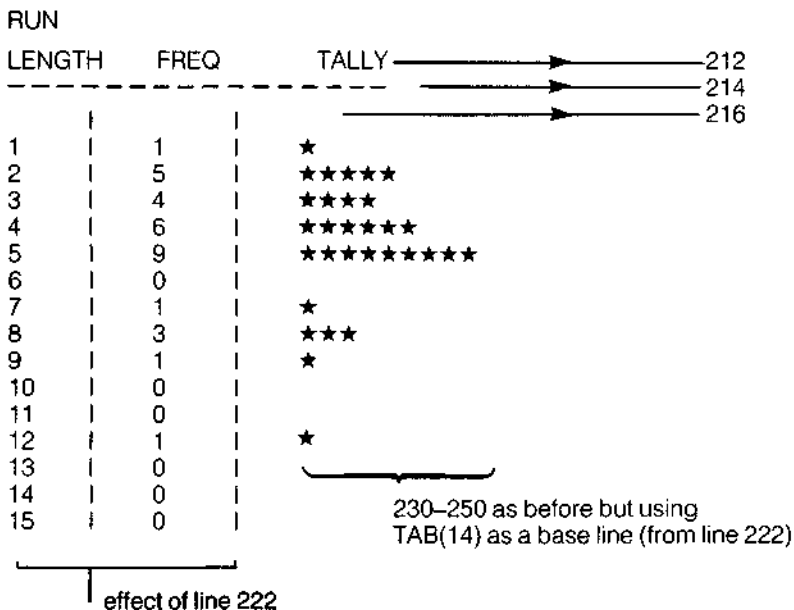
line 222 (in the loop) prints X and F(X) across the page plus the column divides. This line ends in ";" which makes the next PRINT instruction (line 240) appear on the same line.

You will probably have to study this carefully to see all the detail in it:

10 to 120 see Program 4.

```
200 REM **PRINT ROUTINE**
210 PRINT
212 PRINT "LENGTH";TAB(8);"FREQ";TAB(14);"TALLY"
214 PRINT "-----"
216 PRINT TAB(7);"I";TAB(12);"I"
220 FOR X=1 TO N
222 PRINT TAB(2);X;TAB(7);"I";TAB(9);F(X);TAB(12);"I",TAB(14)
225 IF F(X)=0 THEN 255
230 FOR Y=1 TO F(X)
240 PRINT "*"
250 NEXT Y
255 REM **JUMP TO HERE IF ZERO FREQUENCY**
260 PRINT
280 NEXT X
290 REM *****
900 DATA 1,5,4,6,9,0,1,3,0,0,1,0,0,0,-9999
```

Program 10



READY.

Program 10

Exercise 2

Modify Program 4 to give a print-out similar to that developed for Program 10 and to include the following points:

- an appropriate change of headings;
- a print-out of the letters A, E, I, O and U as appropriate in the left-hand column;
- an appropriate scale at the base of the diagram.

5.6 Cutting up strings

Let's now look at a string which, though being an entity in its own right, contains more than one item of information. For example, 23 June 1971 is a single date but there are occasions when we only want to look at part of it, e.g. the month.

Filing dates

How many times have you been faced with a box on a form like this?

DATE						
	D	D	M	M	Y	Y

If we look at D D M M Y Y the presentation has problems. Compare

23rd June 1971, or 230671

and 14th Sept 1973, and 140973.

The later date has the smaller number. Whereas with

4 July 1933, or 040733

15 Jan 1967, and 150167

the later date has the larger number. Clearly then D D M M Y Y is not very useful for filing dates.

The solution is to put the dates in the form Y Y M M D D. This makes the four dates above:

330704, 670115, 710623, and 730914

giving date and number consistency.

Dates are usually stored as numbers in the machine for use in calculations but are entered as strings to allow checking procedures to occur before they are stored.

If we are interested in a salary increment, then the year and month parts of the number would be important. If we are a music centre and send out reminders to our clients every three months to have their pianos tuned, then only the month may be important. The whole data-string is important in its own right, but we can see that there may be valid reasons for cutting it up.

LEFT\$(X\$,I) and RIGHT\$(X\$,I)

If we want to consider part of a string, then we need a statement that will do this for us. We will start with two such statements.

LEFT\$(X\$,I) gives the left-most I characters of the string X\$.

e.g. if X\$ = "CUTTING"
then LEFT\$(X\$,3) = CUT

RIGHT\$(X\$,I) gives the right-most I characters of X\$.

e.g. RIGHT\$(X\$,4) = TING

Let's get the machine to tell us its own story. We enter a 6-character string and use the index I of the FOR. . . NEXT loop to peel off sub-strings of lengths 1 to 6. The scale (line 30) helps you to identify what's happening.

```
10 REM **STRING TEST**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 INPUT "ENTER A 6-CHARACTER STRING";XS
30 PRINT TAB(10); "1234567890"
40 FOR I=1 TO 6
50 LET AS = LEFT$(X$,I)
60 PRINT ;; TAB(10);AS
70 NEXT I
80 END
```

Program 11

Left string run

```
RUN
ENTER A 6-CHARACTER STRING? 123456
      1234567890
1      1
2      12
3      123
4      1234
5      12345
6      123456
>
```

Now if we change line 50 of Program 11 to

```
50 LET A$=RIGHT$(X$,I)
```

and enter the string ABCDEF the result is:

Right string run

```
RUN
ENTER A 6-CHARACTER STRING? ABCDEF
      1234567890
1      F
2      EF
3      DEF
4      CDEF
5      BCDEF
6      ABCDEF
```

READY.

Program 11. Then change line 50 for RIGHT\$.

SAQ 7

If A\$ = 1A2B3C4D, what are the following:

- (a) LEFT\$(A\$,1) (c) RIGHT\$(A\$,3)
(b) LEFT\$(A\$,4) (d) RIGHT\$(A\$,4)

Cutting up strings of variable length

Program 11 is a bit awkward because we had to specify (in line 40) how long the string was to be: 6 characters. But we might want to input strings of any length. This is easily done by modifying Program 11 so that the computer measures the length of the string we input and runs that length to control the FOR. . . NEXT loop. The modifications required are:

```
10 REM **SLICING VARIABLE STRINGS**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 INPUT "ENTER A STRING";XS
30 PRINT TAB(10);"1234567890"
40 FOR I=1 TO LEN(XS)
50 LET A$=LEFT$(XS,I) ]————— LEN(X$) acts as the upper limit of the loop.
60 PRINT I;TAB(10);A$
70 NEXT I
80 END
```

Program 12

```

RUN
ENTER A STRING? HAMSTRING
      1234567890
1      H
2      HA
3      HAM
4      HAMS
5      HAMST
6      HAMSTR
7      HAMSTRI
8      HAMSTRIN
9      HAMSTRING
READY.

```

Program 12.

Exercise 3

Write a program to output those words in the DATA statements of the answer to Exercise 1 which began with a vowel.

Exercise 4

Write a program to change the output of the RIGHT\$ run of Program 11 to:

```

      F
     EF
    DEF
   CDEF
  BCDEF
 ABCDEF

```

MID\$(X\$,I,J)

We have used LEFT\$ and RIGHT\$ to cut sections off either end of a string, but we might want a section in the middle of a string, e.g. M M in Y Y M M D D. There is another BASIC statement that will give us a section of this type:

MID\$(X\$,I,J)

This will cut a sub-string of length J, starting from position I:

MID\$(X\$,I,J)

length of sub-string from position I
position in the string

e.g., if X\$ = POSITION

MID\$(X\$,5,2) = TI

and MID\$(X\$,2,4) = OSIT

We will use the computer again to demonstrate MID\$ at work by a further modification to Program 11. We have already adapted Program 11 to allow us to input a string of any length. This gave us:

```

10 REM **STRING TEST**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 INPUT "ENTER A STRING?"X$
30 PRINT TAB(10);"1234567890"
40 FOR I=1 TO LEN(X$)
50 LET A$=LEFT$(X$,I)
60 PRINT;I;TAB(10);A$
70 NEXT I
80 END

```

Program 13

If we now change line 50 to

```
50 LET A$=MID$(X$,I,1)
```

and input SHOESTRING we get:

```

RUN
ENTER A STRING? SHOESTRING
          1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0
1         S
2         H
3         O
4         E
5         S
6         T
7         R
8         I
9         N
10        G

```

READY.

Here MID\$ is looking at all possible sub-strings of length 1.

If we now use

```
50 LET A$=MID$(X$,I,2)
```

and input STRINGENT we get:

```

RUN
ENTER A STRING? STRINGENT
          1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0
1         ST
2         TR
3         RI
4         IN
5         NG
6         GE
7         EN
8         NT
9         T-----'null' string

```

READY.

Program 13.

The last sub-string caused problems. We can't get a sub-string 2 characters long from a string of 9 characters starting at the 9th character. In trying to do so we enter a default state, and are given a null-string as a reward. There must always be

enough characters left of the original string to take out the sub-string.

Generally, if we wish to take out J characters we will not be able to start this sub-string beyond the $(\text{LEN}(X\$)-J+1)$ th position.

Yes, +1.

e.g., if $\text{LEN}(X\$)=10$ and $J=3$, then $\text{LEN}(X\$)-J=7$;

but we can get a string of length 3 from a string of length 10 if we start at 8, i.e. character positions 8, 9 10 of the original string.

SAQ 8

Write a program to accept as input London telephone numbers in the form 01 XXX XXXX and output the exchange codes only. (Remember that the spaces are characters just as much as the digits.)

Mid-string program

As you have probably spotted, MID\$ can cut left sub-strings and right sub-strings if we want it to. In other words, it can give us every possible sub-string. Here is a program that makes it do that for us. First it prints out all sub-strings of length 1, then all of length 2 and so on until it prints the whole word which is the only sub-string of the same length as the word itself!

```
10 REM **STRING TEST**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 INPUT "ENTER A STRING?"XS
30 PRINT "J";TAB(5);"I";TAB(10); "1234567890"
35 FOR J=1 TO LEN(X$)
40 FOR I=1 TO (LEN(X$)-J+1)
50 LET AS=MID$(X$,I,J)
60 PRINT;J;TAB(5);I;TAB(10);AS
70 NEXT I
72 PRINT " "
75 NEXT J
80 END
```

J is the length of the sub-string, starting at I.

Program 14

RUN

ENTER A STRING? STRING

Note headings and scale

J	I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	1	S									
1	2	T									
1	3	R									
1	4	I									
1	5	N									
1	6	G									
2	1	ST									
2	2	TR									
2	3	RI									
2	4	IN									
2	5	NG									

```

3      1  STR
3      2  TRI
3      3  RIN
3      4  ING

4      1  STRI
4      2  TRIN
4      3  RING

5      1  STRIN
5      2  TRING

6      1  STRING

```

READY.

Program 14.

5.7 VAL

Having found a method of cutting up strings, we now need a method of examining what we have got. One such method is to use VAL(A\$) which looks at the numeric value of A\$.

VAL(A\$) gives us the numerical value of the string A\$ provided A\$ starts with +, - or a digit. In all other cases, VAL(A\$) = 0.

Program to demonstrate VAL

In the following program we input seven strings (123456, 12345A, . . . ABCDEF) and look at VAL for the string, VAL for the left-string of 2 characters and VAL of the mid-string of 2 characters starting from the third character.

You will see that if the left-most character of the string (or sub-strings) is a digit, then a value will be given, even if the rest of the string contains non-numeric characters.

```

10 REM **THE VAL FUNCTION**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
17 REM **START OF LOOP**
20 INPUT "NEXT STRING?"$
25 IF N$="ZZZZ" THEN 990
30 LET N=VAL N$
40 LET P=VAL(LEFT$(N$,2))
50 LET Q=VAL(MID$(N$,3,2))
60 PRINT " "
70 PRINT N,P,Q
80 PRINT " "
90 GOTO 17
990 REM **ALL DONE**
999 END

```

Program 15

NEXT STRING? 1 2 3 4 5 6

1 2 3 4 5 6

1 2

3 4

NEXT STRING? 1 2 3 4 5 A

1 2 3 4 5

1 2

3 4

NEXT STRING? 1 2 3 4 AB

1 2 3 4

1 2

3 4

NEXT STRING? 1 2 3 ABC

1 2 3

1 2

3

NEXT STRING? 1 2 ABCD

1 2

1 2

0

NEXT STRING? 1 ABCDE

1

1

0

NEXT STRING? ABCDEF

0

0

0

VAL still gives the value of the left-most digits, even though the string contains AB—non-numeric characters.

A is now at position 3, so VAL (A\$)=0

☐ Program 15.

SAQ 9

What are the values of the following?

(a) VAL (A\$) where A\$=54

(b) VAL(B\$) where B\$=76XY

(c) VAL(C\$) where C\$=A3

(d) VAL (D\$) where D\$ = -132

(e) VAL(LEFT\$(E\$,2)) where E\$=593

(f) VAL (LEFT\$(F\$,1)) where F\$=8AM

(g) VAL(LEFT\$(G\$,2)) where G\$=Z35

(h) VAL(RIGHT\$(H\$,1)) where H\$=593

(i) VAL(RIGHT\$(I\$,2)) where I\$=8AM

(j) VAL(RIGHT\$(J\$,2)) where J\$=Z35

Date string check

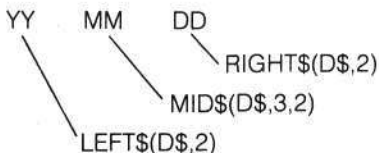
We are now in a position to see how VAL can be put to practical use, in this case to check the accuracy of dates keyed into a computer. This is typical of what happens in computers all the time. We know errors will frequently happen when data is keyed in so, wherever possible, we try to use the computer to detect the errors.

Example 5

Write a program to carry out data checks on the 3 fields of a 6-digit date-string.

Solution

The date-string D\$ has three fields in the form:



We are going to consider the years 1980 and 1981 only; so:

VAL(LEFT\$(D\$,2)) should have a range of 80–81,

VAL(MID\$(D\$,3,2)) should have a range of 1–12,

VAL(RIGHT\$(D\$,2)) should have a range of 1–31.

This is a fairly complex process as we first need to decide on the steps involved. These are given in the following flowchart (Figure 3).

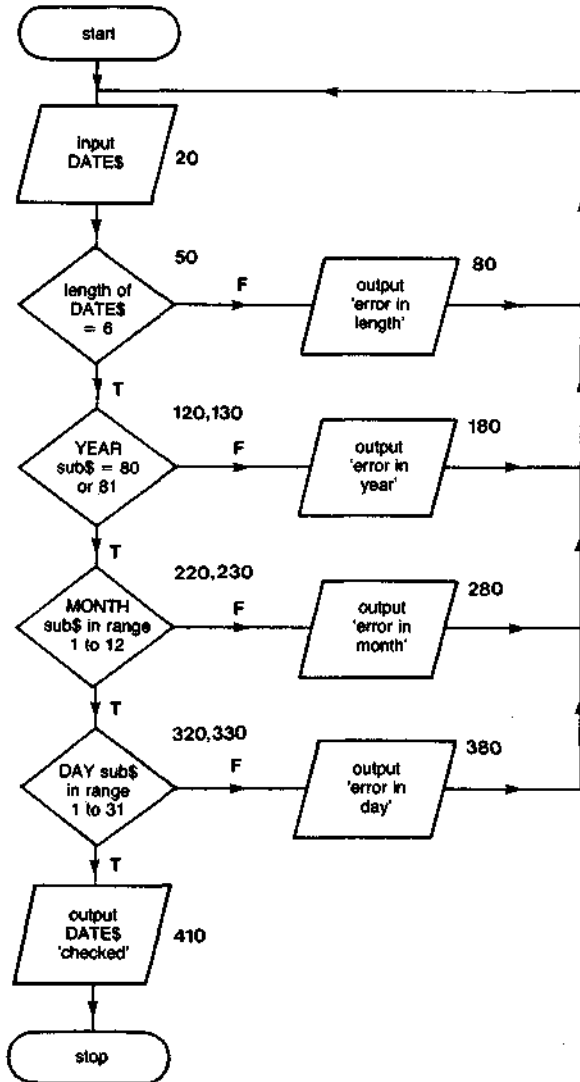


Figure 3 Flowchart showing the four checks on YYMMDD

The program is fairly straightforward as it goes through each of the four checks. If any check fails, the program prints an error message and returns control to line 20.

If there are no errors it runs through to line 410 where the correct entry is confirmed.

```
10 REM *DATE CHECK**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
17 REM **START CHECK**
20 INPUT "NEXT DATE";DS
30 IF DS="ZZZZ" THEN 890
50 IF LEN(DS)=6 THEN 100 ]----- length check
80 PRINT "!!!!!!ERROR IN DATE LENGTH!!!!!!"
90 GOTO 17
100 REM *****
110 PRINT "STRING LENGTH CORRECT"
120 IF VAL(LEFT$(DS,2))=80 THEN 200 ]----- year check
130 IF VAL(LEFT$(DS,2))=81 THEN 200
180 PRINT "!!!!!!ERROR IN YEAR FIELD!!!!!!"
190 GOTO 17
200 REM *****
210 PRINT "YEAR FIELD CORRECT"
220 IF VAL(MID$(DS,3,2))<1 THEN 270 ]----- month check
230 IF VAL(MID$(DS,3,2))<=12 THEN 300
270 REM *****
280 PRINT "!!!!!!ERROR IN MONTH FIELD!!!!!!"
290 GOTO 17
300 REM *****
310 PRINT "MONTH FIELD CORRECT"
320 IF VAL(RIGHT$(DS,2))<1 THEN 370 ]----- day check
330 IF VAL(RIGHT$(DS,2))<31 THEN 400
370 REM *****
380 PRINT "!!!!!!ERROR IN DAY FIELD!!!!!!"
390 GOTO 17
400 REM *****
410 PRINT "DATE STRING WITHIN LIMITS"
490 GOTO 17
890 REM **ALL DONE**
900 PRINT "END OF DATE CHECK"
910 END
```

Program 16

Typical run

```
READY
RUN
NEXT DATE? 1234567
!!!!!!ERROR IN DATE LENGTH!!!!!!
NEXT DATE? 123456
STRING LENGTH CORRECT
!!!!!!ERROR IN YEAR FIELD!!!!!!
NEXT DATE? 803456
STRING LENGTH CORRECT
YEAR FIELD CORRECT
!!!!!!ERROR IN MONTH FIELD!!!!!!
NEXT DATE? 801256
STRING LENGTH CORRECT
YEAR FIELD CORRECT
MONTH FIELD CORRECT
!!!!!!ERROR IN DAY FIELD!!!!!!
```

NEXT DATE? 800131
STRING LENGTH CORRECT
YEAR FIELD CORRECT
MONTH FIELD CORRECT
DATE STRING WITHIN CHECK LIMITS
NEXT DATE? ZZZZ
END OF DATE CHECK
READY.

Program 16.

5.8 TAB footnote: Control Characters

Some BASICs have a TAB statement of the form
PRINT TAB(X,Y); "—PUT YOUR MESSAGE HERE"

where X is the column number across the screen, and Y is the row number down the screen, at which the start of the message will be printed. This is a useful facility for laying out a screen display in as few BASIC statements as possible.

This is not available in Commodore 64 BASIC. What is possible as an alternative, is the use of cursor up/down/left/right commands, included within literal print statements.

PRINT "␣"

means move one row down the screen. The inverse Q symbol is obtained by touching CRSR. To move two rows down would be

PRINT "␣␣"

and so on

To move one row up the screen, use SHIFT and CRSR which appears as

PRINT "␣"

Move one column to the right is

PRINT "␣"

obtained by touching CRSR

and move one column to the left is

PRINT "␣"

obtained by touching SHIFT and CRSR

Finally, move to the top left hand corner of the screen is

PRINT "␣"

obtained by touching CLR HOME

Any combination of these control characters inside the quote marks of a literal print statement is permissible. It is most logical, however, to start at the top left hand corner of the screen, and to move down one line at a time, finishing at the bottom. We shall be using control characters in later Units of the course, but it is wise to use them sparingly, as they can make program listings difficult to follow.

Assignment 5

1. Write a program to find the frequency with which each vowel occurs in the words in the JUDE data of Example 2, giving also a summary of the total number of vowels and consonants which occur in these words.
2. Write a program to input a string of characters and to output this string in reverse order.

Objectives of Unit 5

Check that you are now able to write simple programs:

Using LEN(A\$)

Using LETC(I)=C(I)+1 to count frequencies

To print a frequency diagram

Using TAB to print in columns

Using TAB to print a frequency table with headings and scale

Using LEFT\$(X\$,I)
and RIGHT\$(X\$,I)

Using MID\$(X\$,I,J)

Using VAL(A\$)

Answers to SAQ's and Exercises

SAQ 1

(a) 3; (b) 1; (c) 2 (not 72 – LEN counts the number of characters); (d) 7 (LEN counts the characters regardless of whether they are numbers, letters or spaces).

SAQ 2

Your answer should be:

Word length	Count	Total
1	1	1
2	1111	5
3	1111	4
4	1111 1	6
5	1111 1111	9
6		0
7	1	1
8	111	3
9	1	1
10		0
11		0
12	1	1
13		0
14		0
15		0

SAQ 3

(a) C(3)=1 (Not 3! C(3) has counted the number of 3's inputted.)

(b) C(9)=2

(c) C(1)=4

(d) C(0)=3

Exercise 1

The solution appears in the following text.

SAQ 4

★★

★★★★★

★★★★★★

★★★★★★★

★★★

★

There will be a message

? OUT OF DATA ERROR IN 10

SAQ 5

```
10 PRINT"COL1";TAB(9);"COL2";TAB(19);"COL3"
```

SAQ 6

```
10 INPUT A,B,C
```

```
20 PRINT TAB(A);"HEADING";TAB(B);"HEADING";TAB(C);"HEADING"
```

Program 17

Exercise 2

```
10 REM **FREQUENCY DISTRIBUTION**
```

```
15 REM **PREPARATION PICTURE*****
```

```
20 REM **FREQUENCY-LIST IS F(K)**
```

```
22 PRINT CHR$(147)
```

```
25 DIM V$(5)
```

```
30 DIM F(6)
```

```
32 FOR I=1 TO 5
```

```
34 READ V$(I)
```

```
36 NEXT I
```

```
40 LET K=1
```

```
45 REM **START OF READING LOOP**
```

```
50 READ F(K)
```

```
60 IF F(K)=-9999 THEN 100
```

```
70 LET K=K+1
```

```
80 GOTO 45
```

```
90 REM *****
```

```
100 REM **DON'T ADD -9999 TO LIST**
```

```
110 LET N=K-1
```

```
120 REM *****
```

```
200 REM **PRINT ROUTINE*****
```

```
210 PRINT
```

```
212 PRINT"VOWEL";TAB(9);"FREQ";TAB(15);"TALLY"
```

```
214 PRINT"-----"
```

```
220 FOR X=1 TO N
```

```
222 PRINT TAB(2);V$(X);TAB(7);" ";TAB(10);F(X);TAB(14)" ";TAB(16);
```

```
230 FOR Y=1 TO F(X) ]————— prints out from word list
```

```
240 PRINT "★"
```

```
250 NEXT Y
```

```
260 PRINT
```

```
280 NEXT X
```

```
290 PRINT" . . . SCALE . . . ";TAB(15)"0 . . . 5 . . . 0 . . . 5 . . . 0"
```

```
300 REM *****
```

```
800 DATA A,E,I,O,U
```

```
900 DATA 9.16.10.10.6,-9999
```

Program 18


```

RUN
VOWEL   FREQ   TALLY
=====
A       |     9   | ★★★★★★★★
E       |    16   | ★★★★★★★★★★★★★★
I       |    10   | ★★★★★★★★★★
O       |    10   | ★★★★★★★★★★
U       |     6   | ★★★★★★
..... SCALE ..... 0 ..... 5 ..... 0 ..... 5 ..... 0
READY.

```

Program 18.

SAQ 7

(a) 1; (b) 1A2B; (c) C4D; (d) 3C4D.

Notice that LEFT\$ and RIGHT\$ treat all characters in a string in the same way. It doesn't matter whether they are numbers or letters, they still get counted..

Exercise 3

```

10 REM ★★IS LEFT-MOST CHARACTER A VOWEL?★★
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
17 REM ★★READ LOOP★★
20 READ W$
30 IF W$="ZZZZ" THEN 9999
40 LET L$=LEFT$(W$,1)
50 IF L$="A" THEN 190
60 IF L$="E" THEN 190
70 IF L$="I" THEN 190
80 IF L$="O" THEN 190
90 IF L$="U" THEN 190
100 GOTO 17
190 REM ★★★★★★★★
200 PRINT
210 PRINT L$, W$
220 GOTO 17
230 REM ★★★★★★★★
900 DATA THE,HORSE,STOOD,STILL,TILL,HE,HAD,FINISHED,THE,HYMN
910 DATA WHICH,JUDE,REPEATED,UNDER,THE,SWAY,OF,A,POLYTHEISTIC
920 DATA FANCY,THAT,HE,WOULD,NEVER,HAVE,THOUGHT,OF,HUMOURING
930 DATA IN,BROAD,DAYLIGHT,ZZZZ
9990 REM ★★ALL DONE★★
9999 END

```

Program 19

```

RUN
U       UNDER
O       OF
A       A
O       OF
I       IN

```

READY.

Program 19.

Exercise 4

```

10 REM **STRING TEST**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 INPUT "ENTER 6-CHARACTER STRING!"X$
30 PRINT TAB(10);"1234567890"
40 FOR I=1 TO 6
50 LET A$=RIGHT(X$,I)
60 PRINT:!:TAB(16-I);A$
70 NEXT I
80 END

```

Program 20

```

RUN
ENTER 6-CHARACTER STRING? ABCDEF
                        1234567890

```

```

1
2
3
4
5
6
                        F
                        EF
                        DEF
                        CDEF
                        BCDEF
                        ABCDEF

```

READY.

 Program 20.**SAQ 8**

```

5 PRINT CHR$(147)
10 INPUT "NEXT TELEPHONE NUMBER?"N$
20 LET A$=MID$(N$,4,3)
30 PRINT A$
40 GOTO 10

```

Program 21 Program 21.**SAQ 9**

(a) 54; (b) 76 (stops at letters); (c) 0 (starts with a letter. Therefore 0); (d) -132; (e) 59; (f) 8; (g) 0 (starts with a letter); (h) 3; (i) 0 (starts at A which is a letter); (j) 35.

UNIT 6

Mainly about dice and games

6.1	Random numbers	146
6.2	The RND function	147
6.3	Random number postscript	152
6.4	Two examples	153
6.5	Keeping scores	158
6.6	Short cuts in program writing	159
6.7	Concatenation	161
6.8	STR\$	162
	Assignment 6	133
	Objectives of Unit 6	164
	Answers to SAQ's and Exercises	165

6.1 Random numbers

The programming function which allows us to inject a sense of fun into a program is the one which generates random numbers. This function is at the heart of many of the game-playing and simulation programs which are now available for microcomputers.

You will have met random numbers when playing games; games which involve tossing a coin or throwing a dice, or drawing numbers out of a hat. These domestic games have become institutionalised in casinos, bingo clubs, the ritualistic draw for the FA Cup competition, and, of course, on a larger scale, the monthly draw for premium bonds. Although we all have an intuitive idea of what we mean by a sequence of random numbers, it is quite difficult to define the idea clearly. Let's have a look at some number sequences to try and clarify this idea.

Here are three 'thought experiments' each of which involves throwing a six-sided die fifteen times. Imagine that in the first experiment the uppermost values of the dice had those values shown in sequence A shown in Figure 1. The second experiment generated the numbers shown in sequence B and the third experiment gave us the numbers shown in sequence C.

Sequence A

5,1,2,4,6,3,2,1,6,3,5,4,3,4,2

Sequence B

6,6,6,6,6,6,6,6,6,6,6,6,6,6,6

Sequence C

1,2,3,4,5,6,1,2,3,4,5,6,1,2,3

Figure 1 Random sequences?

Most of us would be quite happy that sequence A represented a typical sequence of numbers generated by throwing a die fifteen times. This number sequence shows no definable patterns or repetitions and each number occurrence would seem to be 'equally likely'. We are not surprised at the appearance of any of the sub-sequences in this main sequence. By contrast, however, sequence B is quite unreasonable. We would certainly not expect to have thrown fifteen sixes with fifteen consecutive throws of the die. We would be highly suspicious had this happened and we would blame a weighted die. Intuitively, we would be prepared to accept that sequence A had occurred 'by chance' but would not be prepared to accept that this was so for sequence B.

Another feature about random number sequences which we learn by experience is that, in long sequences, localised 'unfair' occurrences iron themselves out. What we mean by this is that after, say, a hundred throws, we would expect on average about sixteen ones, about sixteen twos, sixteen threes and so on. In other words, over a longer sequence we expect the 'laws of chance' to apply. If we now consider sequence C with its emerging pattern '...6,1,2,3,4,5,6,1...' continued for a hundred throws then this long term averaging-out effect would be satisfied. But once again this sequence would not be intuitively acceptable to us as random because we would not expect this sequential pattern to persist over a hundred throws by chance alone.

These concepts of 'statistical averaging' over a sequence of throws, and of the 'reasonableness' of the patterning of the numbers in sequence are intuitively

acquired from games of chance. There are statistical techniques to test these two features of a random number sequence but we will not be concerned with those techniques here.

A computer is a very determinate machine. You will therefore not be surprised to learn that quite special features have to be programmed into the machine to achieve a sequence of random numbers. For our uses, however, we will assume that a table of random numbers has been stored in the machine's memory. The sequence of numbers is very long and generation would have to occur for a long time before the sequence repetition became apparent. To achieve a different random number sequence from one program execution to another, all that a machine has to do is to start reading this table of random numbers from a different point. This starting point is often referred to as the 'seed' and we talk about random number sequences as starting from different seeds. Because the computer has to 'contrive' random number sequences, the numbers produced are usually referred to as pseudo-random numbers.

6.2 The RND function

RND is a function that requires an argument. That is a number in brackets after it:

RND(A)

the argument of RND

'A' might be negative, zero or positive and the following program explores the effect of different values for A.

```
10 REM **THE RND FUNCTION**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 INPUT "NEXT ARGUMENT FOR RND";A
30 FOR I=1 TO 10
40 LET B=RND(A)
50 PRINT B
60 NEXT I
70 END
```

Program 1 Effect of A on RND

```
RUN
NEXT ARGUMENT FOR RND? -1
2.99196472E-08
2.99196472E-08
2.99196472E-08
2.99196472E-08
2.99196472E-08
2.99196472E-08
2.99196472E-08
2.99196472E-08
2.99196472E-08
2.99196472E-08
READY.
```

Negative A seems to fix the random number

```

RUN
NEXT ARGUMENT FOR RND? 0
.417970002
.468751073
.750001013
.703126013
.195313454
.421876013
.144532621
.66406405
.132814467
.988283575
READY.

```

Zero A also seems to fix the random numbers.

```

RUN
NEXT ARGUMENT FOR RND? 1
.186647695
.531850191
.615078971
.862640194
.868612207
.665991999
.168051895
.749537644
.921491476
.376282314
READY.

```

These look more like a sequence of random numbers

Program 1 to see the effect of A on your Microcomputer.

As far as generating useful random numbers is concerned we will ignore arguments other than 1.

RND(1)

What the above investigation demonstrates is that

RND(1)

will give random numbers within the range 0—1.

Changing the argument (A) doesn't seem to extend the range so how can we get other random numbers? Quite simply by multiplying RND(1) by another number.

So:

RND(1) gives a random number in the range 0—1;

6★RND(1) gives a random number in the range 0—6;

and 52★RND(1) gives a random number in the range 0—52;

etc.

You can think of RND(1) as a 'conversion factor' which changes at will. The following program tries out this idea.

```

10 REM ★★RND AS A CONVERSION FACTOR★★
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 PRINT " I";TAB(9);"RND(1)";TAB(22);"6★RND(1)"
40 PRINT "-----"

```

```

50 FOR I=1 TO 10
60 LET B=RND(1)
70 LET C=6*B
80 LET D=52*B
90 PRINT I;TAB(6);B;TAB(20);C
100 NEXT I
110 END

```

Program 2 RND(1) as a conversion factor

Run with line 70 as LET C=6*B

RUN	RND(1)	6*RND(1)
1	.313989386	1.88393632
2	.4103648	2.4621888
3	.0372279632	.223367779
4	.653960338	3.92376203
5	.829575892	4.97745535
6	.968877828	5.81326697
7	.719719175	4.31878305
8	.655509562	3.93305737
9	.988886233	5.9333174
10	.495105785	2.97063471

READY.

Run with line 70 as LET C=52*B plus change of heading in line 20.

```

10 REM **RND AS A CONVERSION FACTOR**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 PRINT " I";TAB(9);"RND(1);TAB(22);"52*RND(1)"
40 PRINT "-----"
50 FOR I=1 TO 10
60 LET B=RND(1)
70 LET C=52*B
80 LET D=52*B
90 PRINT I;TAB(6);B;TAB(20);C
100 NEXT I
110 END

```

RUN	RND(1)	52*RND(1)
1	.962672411	50.0589654
2	.188713114	9.81308195
3	.490369113	25.4991939
4	.877514285	45.6307428
5	.310898818	16.667385
6	.23589211	12.2663897
7	.682800869	35.5056452
8	.672005353	34.9442784
9	.0160770983	.836009114
10	.274055703	14.2508966

READY.

[K] Program 3

SAQ 1

Write a program to print out 6 random numbers in the range 0 to 5.999999.

The RND+1 function

If you look again at the output of Program 3 on the run with $6 \star \text{RND}(1)$, the numbers were:

```
1.88393632
2.4621888
 .22367779
3.92376203
4.97745535
5.81326697
3.93305737
5.9333174
2.97063471
```

Look now at the number before the decimal point. They are:

1, 2, 0, 3, 4, 5, 4, 3, 5, 2

i.e. members of the set

(0,1,2,3,4,5)

But, if we were throwing dice we would generate members of the set (1,2,3,4,5,6). All we have to do then is to add 1 to each member of the first set to get the second.

Now in games we frequently want to throw a dice (outcomes 1,2,3,4,5,6) or use a pack of cards (52 outcomes) so we are particularly interested in the functions:

$6 \star \text{RND}(1)+1$ and $52 \star \text{RND}(1)+1$

The following program allows us to explore these.

```
10 REM **RND AS A CONVERSION FACTOR**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 PRINT " I";TAB(9);"RND(1)";TAB(22)"6★RND(1)+1"
40 PRINT "-----"
50 FOR I=1 TO 10
60 LET B=RND(1)
70 LET C=6★RND(1)+1
90 PRINT I;TAB(6);B;TAB(20);C
100 NEXT I
110 END
```

Program 3 $6 \star \text{RND}(1)+1$

RUN	RND(1)	6★RND(1)
1	.330653535	4.05197904
2	.142569108	2.30689197
3	.833693422	3.13529572
4	.91441378	4.41938042
5	.998117197	1.91661943
6	.971321694	5.4688784
7	.0807038861	3.65650019
8	.735023715	1.19667692
9	.291704401	3.40376347
10	.573413704	6.6935622

READY.

Program 4.

The INT function

If you now look at the columns in the runs of Program 4 picked out in colour you will now see that we have generated the random numbers we needed. Column 3 has numbers from 1 to 6 and column 4 has numbers from 1 to 52.

But what about all the garbage to the right of the decimal point? Well, we have a function to get rid of that: the INT function.

The effect of $\text{INT}(X)$ is to give the whole number (or integer part) of the number X , i.e. the largest integer which is not larger than X . The effect of INT is to 'chop' down to the next highest whole number:

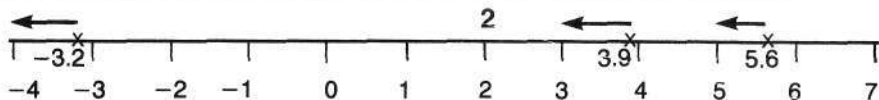
$$\text{INT}(5.6) = 5$$

$$\text{INT}(3.9) = 3$$

$$\text{INT}(-3.2) = -4$$

$$\text{INT}(2) = 2$$

If $\text{INT}(-3.2) = -4$ surprises you, look at the number line and remember that INT always chops down to the next whole number. It doesn't 'round' numbers.



SAQ 2

What are the values of the following

- $\text{INT}(4.5)$
- $\text{INT}(9.1)$
- $\text{INT}(-2.5)$
- (-0.99)
- $\text{INT}(1.01)$

Now, with INT, we can at last generate the whole numbers from 1 to 6 and from 1 to 52 to use as dice or cards. All we need is

$$\text{INT}(6★\text{RND}(1)+)$$

$$\text{and } \text{INT}(52★\text{RND}(1)+\text{E})$$

The following program prints out the values of these two functions:

```

10 REM **THE INT FUNCTION**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 PRINT " I";TAB(5);"B (=RND(1)) INT(6*B+1) INT(52*B+1)"
40 PRINT "-----"
50 FOR I=1 TO 10
60 LET B=RND(1)
70 LET C=INT(6*B+1)
80 LET D=INT(52*B+1)
90 PRINT I;TAB(6);B;TAB(22);C;TAB(33);D
100 NEXT I
110 END

```

Program 5 INT to give whole numbers

RUN	B(=RND(1))	INT(6*B+1)	INT(52*B+1)
1	.0699786424	1	4
2	.0240625019	1	2
3	.130669805	1	7
4	.684806689	5	36
5	.129658042	1	7
6	.358230933	3	19
7	.687650651	5	36
8	.0825698957	1	5
9	.98751032	6	52
10	.269134563	2	14

READY.

Program 5

6.3 Random number postscript

The following program simulates the tossing of a die 100 times.

```

10 REM **100 TOSSES OF A DIE**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 FOR I=1 TO 10
40 FOR J=1 TO 10
50 LET X=INT(6*RND(1)+1)
60 PRINT: X;
70 NEXT J
80 PRINT
90 NEXT I
100 END

```

Program 6 Die toss

```

RUN
TOSSING A DIE
4 1 6 6 4 3 2 4 3 1
6 6 2 2 5 3 6 5 2 2
3 3 6 3 4 2 6 1 2 6
6 1 4 3 5 2 2 2 1 6
6 3 1 1 6 3 4 5 2 5
6 1 4 2 2 4 5 1 2 4
6 6 5 4 3 4 5 5 1 5
3 5 4 3 5 3 6 6 6 6
1 5 3 4 3 1 1 4 2 1
6 3 6 1 6 1 6 5 3 1
READY.

```

Program 6

Just to make sure that you understand the INT function try the following questions.

SAQ 3

The program:

```

15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 FOR X=-3.8 TO -1.8 STEP (.2)
30 LET Y=INT(X)
40 PRINT X,Y
50 NEXT X
60 END
70 NEXT J
80 PRINT
90 NEXT I
100 END

```

Program 7

prints out 10 pairs of numbers. What are they?

SAQ 4

The program

```

10 REM **SAQ**
15 PRINT CHR$ 147
20 FOR X=1.6 TO 3.4 STEP (.2)
30 LET Y=INT(X)
40 PRINT X,Y
50 NEXT X
60 END

```

Program 8

prints out 9 pairs of numbers. What are they?

6.4 Two examples

This section is made up of two lengthy examples. We suggest that you try and treat them as exercises first and then compare your solution with ours.

Example 1

Write a program to simulate tossing a coin 100 times. Count and output the number of times the coin falls heads and tails.

Solution

The heart of the solution is a random number generator which produces a 1 or a 2.

We will use a 1 to represent a tail and 2 to represent a head. Using this approach, a descriptive algorithm for the solution to the problem is:

1. Start.
2. Set heads total and tails total to zero.
3. Start loop counter.
4. Generate the two values 1 and 2 randomly.
5. If random number equals 2 then go to statement 8 otherwise go on to statement 6.
6. Add 1 to tails total.
7. Go to statement 9.
8. Add 1 to heads total.
9. Add 1 to loop counter.
10. If loop counter ≤ 100 then go to statement 4 otherwise go on to statement 11.
11. Output total heads and total tails.
12. Stop.

Figure 2 Descriptive solution to coin toss

Alternatively you may prefer a flowchart description to the solution:

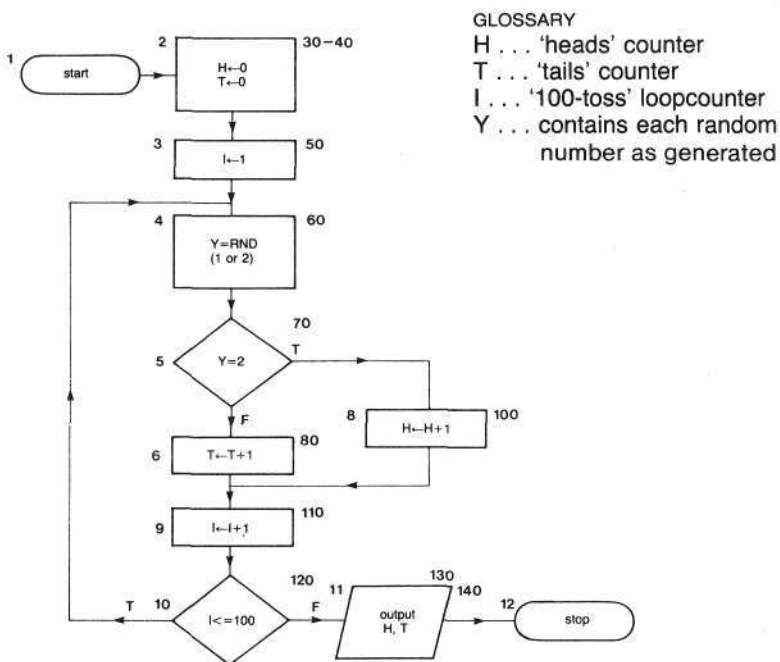


Figure 3 Flowchart for coin toss

and finally the program:

```
10 REM **TOSS 1 COIN 100 TIMES**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
25 PRINT "RESULTS FROM TOSSING A COIN 100 TIMES"
30 LET H=0
40 LET T=0
50 LET I=1
55 REM **TOSS COIN**
60 LET Y=INT(2*RND(1)+1)
70 IF Y=2 THEN 95
80 LET T=T+1
90 GOTO 105
95 REM **2=HEAD**
100 LET H=H+1
105 REM **TOTAL COUNT**
110 LET I=I+1
120 IF I<=100 THEN 55
130 PRINT "HEADS", "TAILS"
140 PRINT H, T
150 END
```

Typical outputs

```
HEADS    TAILS
51        49
RUN
HEADS    TAILS
57        43
RUN
HEADS    TAILS
55        45
```

Program 9 Coin toss

Program 9

Example 2

Write a program to simulate tossing 2 coins 100 times. Count and output the number of tails that the outcome of this imaginary experiment is: head-head (HH), tail-tail (TT), and head-tail or tail-head (HT or TH).

Solution

We use the same scoring rules: 1 for a tail and 2 for a head but we are now tossing 2 coins. We store the score from the first coin in C1 and the score from the second coin in C2. Then we add C1 and C2 to give the total score for that throw:

$$S=C1+C2$$

S can be 2, 3 or 4:

outcome	score
TT	$1+1=2$
TH or HT	$1+2=2+1=3$
HH	$2+2=4$

Then we count how many 2's we get, how many 3's and how many 4's.

Counter for 2's T2
 Counter for 3's M1 (M for Mix of H's and T's)
 Counter for 4's H2

The flowchart of the solution is:

GLOSSARY OF SYMBOLS

H2 ... total for HH
 T2 ... total for TT
 M1 ... total for HT or TH
 C1 ... random 1 or 2 for coin 1
 C2 ... random 1 or 2 for coin 2
 S ... sum of coin scores.

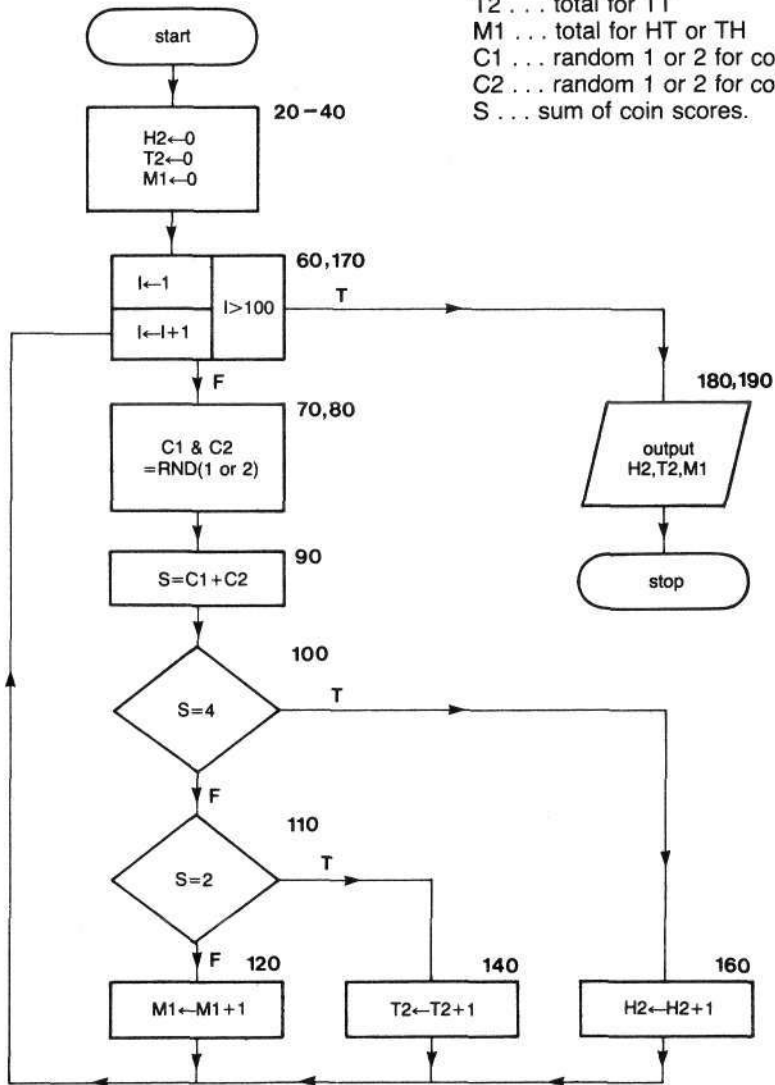


Figure 4 Flowchart for two coin toss

And the program is:

```
10 REM **TOSS 2 COINS 100 TIMES**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
17 PRINT "TOSSING 2 COINS 100 TIMES"
20 LET H2=0
30 LET T2=0
40 LET M1=0
50 REM **TOSSING LOOP**
60 FOR I=1 TO 100
70 LET C1=INT(2*RND(1)+1)
80 LET C2=INT(2*RND(1)+1)
90 LET S=C1+C2
100 IF S=4 THEN 155
110 IF S=2 THEN 135
120 LET M1=M1+1
130 GOTO 165
135 REM **TWO TAILS**
140 LET T2=T2+1
150 GOTO 165
155 REM **TWO HEADS**
160 LET H2=H2+1
165 REM **RETURN FOR NEXT TOSS**
170 NEXT I
180 PRINT " TT", " HT", " HH"
190 PRINT T2,M1,H2
200 END
```

Program 10 Two coin toss

RUN

TT	HT	HH
21	54	25

READY.

RUN

TT	HT	HH
26	48	26

READY.

RUN

TT	HT	HH
26	48	26

READY.

RUN

TT	HT	HH
24	55	21

READY.

Program 10

6.5 Keeping scores

You may have noticed that we have used some ungainly variable names, such as T2, H2 and M1. Perhaps you have been thinking, 'What about lists? Couldn't they be as useful here as they were with frequency tables?' Indeed they could so let's try a score list S(I) for the coin tossing. So we say:

If the score is 2, add 1 to the number in S(2)

If the score is 3, add 1 to the number in S(3)

If the score is 4, add 1 to the number in S(4)

generally

If the score is S, add 1 to the number in S(S)

Application to tossing two coins

If we go back to Example 2, we can re-use lines 10 to 90 and then put in our new scoring system:

```
100 LET S(S)=S(S)+1
```

The program then becomes:

```
10 REM ★★TOSS 2 COINS 100 TIMES★★
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
17 PRINT "TOSSING 2 COINS 100 TIMES"
18 DIM S(4)
20 LET S(4)=0
30 LET S(3)=0
40 LET S(2)=0
50 REM ★★TOSSING LOOP★★
60 FOR I=1 TO 100
70 LET C1=INT(2★RND(1)+1)
80 LET C2=INT(2★RND(1)+1)
90 LET S=C1+C2
100 LET S(S)=S(S)+1
110 NEXT I
120 PRINT " TT", " HT", " HH"
130 PRINT S(2),S(3),S(4)
140 END
RUN
```

Note the addition of
18 DIM S(4)

```
TOSSING 2 COINS 100 TIMES
```

```
TT      HT      HH
21      58      21
```

READY.

```
RUN
```

```
TT      HT      HH
27      47      26
```

READY.

```
RUN
```

```
TT      HT      HH
31      52      17
```

READY.

Program 11

RUN

TT	HT	HH
19	55	26

READY.

Program 11

Score lists for dice

The score-list for throwing one die would be:

S(1),S(2),S(3) . . . S(6);

and for throwing two dice:

S(2),S(3),S(4) . . . S(12).

Exercise 1

Write a program to simulate throwing a die 100 times. Count and output the number of times each score occurs.

Exercise 2

Modify the program written for Exercise 1 to simulate the throwing of two dice 100 times.

Exercise 3

Write a program to display the data obtained from the program in Exercise 2, in the form of a frequency diagram.

6.6 Short cuts in program writing

Our programs are becoming quite long and the longer they are, the longer they take to key in to the computer. There are short cuts which help to speed up keying. We have deliberately avoided short cuts up to this point, feeling that intelligibility of coding is more important than speed. We will abbreviate some of our coding at times to show you what can be achieved, but will generally continue our policy of clarity of interpretation. If you are sending assignments to a tutor for marking, then please use short cuts sparingly.

The principal short cuts are:

1. The word LET may be omitted from assignment statements. Thus:

20 LET A=B can be written 20 A=B

2. More than one statement per line is allowed; the statements must be separated by :

Thus:

```
10 LET A=7
20 LET B=8
30 PRINT A+B
```

can be written:

```
10 LET A=7: LET B=8: PRINT A+B
```

or, using the first short cut as well:

```
10 A=7: B=8: PRINT A+B
```

(This short cut speeds up program execution as well as keying time. Computers take up time interpreting each line number, so the fewer line numbers, the quicker will be the execution.)

3. The word PRINT may be replaced by ? on the Commodore 64. However, when you ask the computer to list your program you find ? is replaced by the full word PRINT.

E.g. if you key in

```
10 A=7: B=8: ? A+B
```

and then ask for LIST you get

```
10 A=7: B=8: PRINT A+B
```

Appendix D of your User Manual lists all possible keyword abbreviations.

4. You can include expressions in PRINT statements. These expressions will be executed. We've already done this above where we said PRINT A+B.

But be careful

- Don't cram statements on a line just for the sake of doing so.
- Be very careful with transfer of control statements. E.g. GOTO . . . , IF . . . , THEN . . . , and later on GO SUB . . . Remember, the lines referred to must exist and program control goes to the beginning of the line in the GOTO statement
- Most programs spend 80% of their time in 20% of their coding. So, concentrate on abbreviating (and therefore speeding up) those statements which work the hardest, e.g. lines 70-120 in the solution to Exercise 3.
- The line number associated with a REM statement takes up run time so it is useful to tack a :REM . . . on to the end of other statements. We do so in programs later in this Unit. They don't all look as tidy as they ought to, though.
- Take care to distinguish clearly between : and ; in the listings of programs: yours, ours and especially those in computer magazines, The pairs (, < and), > are often barely distinguishable in some listings.
- In Unit 10 the command PRINT# must be keyed in full, ?# is not acceptable to the Commodore 64.

Some examples of short cuts

Program 11 which was 14 lines can be written in 10

```
10 REM ★★TOSS 2 COINS 100 TIMES★★
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 DIM S(4):S(4)=0:S(3)=0:S(2)=0
50 PRINT "TWO-COIN TOSS"
60 FOR I=1 TO 100
70 C1=INT(2★RND(1)+1):C2=INT(2★RND(1)+1)
90 S=C1+C2:S(S)=S(S)+1
110 NEXT I
120 PRINT " TT", " HT", " HH"
130 PRINT S(2),S(3),S(4)
140 END
```

3 assignment statements without LET

this is where the work is being done, 70 to 90 are executed 100 times

not worth condensing, because it is executed only once per run

Program 12

SAQ 5

Try using the short cuts on Program 20.

6.7 Concatenation

Having gone to a lot of trouble in Unit 5 to cut up strings, we will now spend some time putting them back together. This second ugliest word in the computing repertoire means to chain or link together. Program 9 shows us what is happening.

```
10 REM **CONCATENATION**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 INPUT "FIRST STRING";AS
30 INPUT "SECOND STRING";B$
40 PRINT AS + B$
50 END
```

Program 13 Concatenation

```
RUN
?GET
?TOGETHER
GETTOGETHER
READY.
```

```
RUN
?CONCATE
?NATIONA
CONCATENATION
READY.
```

SAQ 2

Write a program to input a word and output its plural assuming that all words only need s adding to make their plurals.

Program 14 shows how we can use concatenation to build up a string from a list of symbols. We have stored the letters in line 40(DATA) and in the loop 110-140 we add a new letter to the string on each around the loop.

```
10 REM **MORE CONCATENATION**
20 REM **SET UP DIRECTORY**
22 PRINT CHR$(146)
25 DIM AS(10)
30 FOR I=1 TO 10: READ AS(I): NEXT I
40 DATA A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J
50 REM ****
100 CS="":REM **EMPTY CS**
110 FOR J=1 TO 10
120 CS=CS+AS(J)
130 PRINT:J,C$
140 NEXT J
159 END
```

Program 14

```

RUN
1      A
2      AB
3      ABC
4      ABCD
5      ABCDE
6      ABCDEF
7      ABCDEFG
8      ABCDEFGH
9      ABCDEFGHI
10     ABCDEFGHIJ
READY.

```

Program 14

This process is of great value in textual analysis, but we will use it for codes and games.

6.8 STR\$

This function has the reverse effect to the VAL-function. The VAL-function gives the numerical value of a string, and the STR\$-function turns a number into just a string of characters.

STR\$(X) gives the string representation of the value of X.

Printing STR\$

STR\$(N) looks very much like N itself as the following program shows:

```

10 REM **THE STR$-FUNCTION**
15 PRINT CHR$
20 INPUT "THE NEXT NUMBER?"N
25 PRINT "012345678901234567890"
30 PRINT: N,STR$(N)
40 END

```

Program 15

```

RUN
NEXT NUMBER? 17
012345678901234567890
 17          17
RUN
NEXT NUMBER?-17
012345678901234567890
-17         -17
RUN
NEXT NUMBER? 99.34
012345678901234567890
 99.34      99.34
RUN
NEXT NUMBER?-99.34
012345678901234567890
-99.34     -99.34

```

Program 15

However, in each run the second figure is treated as a string.

In the next program (Program 16) we make use of the fact that STR\$(8) treats 8, say, as a string so that we add the character 8 (as opposed to its value) onto the end of a string.

```
40 REM **MORE STRS**
50 REM *****
60 PRINT CHR$(147)
100 CS="":REM**EMPTY CS**
110 FOR J=1 TO 10
120 CS=CS+STR$(J)
130 PRINT;J,CS
140 NEXT J
150 END
```

Program 16

```
RUN
1      1
2      12
3      123
4      1234
5      12345
6      123456
7      1234567
8      12345678
9      123456789
10     12345678910
READY.
```

Thus, we still cannot link the characters in adjacent positions because of the space allocated for the sign of the number.

Program 16

Exercise 4

Write a program to input a word from the keyboard, to code each letter as a number and output the code as sequence of numbers.

Guidance if required: set up a directory-list as in Program 14 but for the whole alphabet. Remember the DIM statement. Take each letter of the word and compare it with the items of the directory-list. When found in the directory, add that index, in string form, to the code string.

Exercise 5

Write a program to generate 20 random 3-letter words. (It's interesting to see how many times you have to run this program until you generate a bona fide word.)

Assignment 6

1. Write a program to deal a hand of cards, the size of which is left to you. Print out the hand in the form 1D, KC, 8H, 6S . . . , where D=diamonds, C=clubs, etc. 1 = ace, T, J, Q and K stand for ten, jack, queen and king. Remember that when a card has been dealt it cannot be dealt again.

Guidance if required: write the program in sections:

- set up the deck (we have previously called it a directory);
- deal (using the RND generator 1-52 is easiest);
- output.

When a card has been dealt, put a marker (e.g. an ★) in that position to signal that it cannot be used again.

2. Write a program to simulate a game of snakes and ladders using a 4×4 board and one die.

Guidance if required: though the board is square it can be represented in memory by a list B(I):

i.e. B(1),B(2),B(3) . . . B(16)

B(3)=+4 could be a ladder going up 4 places.

B(9)=-7 could be a snake going down 7 places, etc.

Don't forget that your last throw has to give the right number to complete the board at exactly 16.

Suggestions (not part of the Assignment for your tutor): play the game a few times and estimate the average number of throws needed to run the board. Change the layout of the board and try some more runs. Design a bigger board, etc.

Objectives of Unit 6

When you have finished this unit check that you are able to:

Use RND to generate random numbers between 0 and 1

Use INT and RND to generate integer random numbers between 0 and a given integer N.

Simulate the tosses of coin.

Simulate the tosses of a die.

Simulate the throw of a die

Simulate the throws of two dice.

Use score lists.

Abbreviate programs with ? and multiple statement lines.

Concatenate strings.

Use STR\$(X)

Answers to SAQ's and Exercises

SAQ 1

```
10 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 FOR I=1 TO 6
30 LET N=6*RND(1)
40 PRINT N
50 NEXT I
60 END
```

Program 17

SAQ 2

(a) 4; (b) 9; (c) -3; (d) -1; (e) 1

SAQ 3

```
RUN
-3.8      -4
-3.6      -4
-3.4      -4
-3.2      -4
-3         -3
-2.8      -3
-2.6      -3
-2.4      -3
-2.2      -3
-2         -2
READY.
```

SAQ 4

```
RUN
1.6      1
1.8      1
2         2
2.2      2
2.4      2
2.6      2
2.8      2
3         3
3.2      3
```

Exercise 1

Descriptive algorithm for 1 die toss

1. Start.
2. Set the 6 total score locations to zero.
3. Start the 100-throws loop.
4. Generate a random score from the set (1,2,3,4,5,6).
5. Increment the total linked with this score.
6. If loop counter ≤ 100 then go to statement 4 otherwise go on to statement 7.
7. Output score and total for each score value.
8. Stop

```

10 REM **THROW ONE DIE 100 TIMES**
12 PRINT CHR$(147)
14 REM **SPACE FOR SCORE COUNTERS**
15 DIM S(6)
17 PRINT "RESULTS FROM THROWING A DIE 100 TIMES"
18 REM **ZEROISE COUNTERS**
20 FOR J=1 TO 6
30 LET S(J)=0
40 NEXT J
50 REM **GENERATION LOOP**
60 FOR I=1 TO 100
70 LET S=INT(6*RND(1)+1)
80 LET S(S)=S(S)+1
85 REM **END OF LOOP**
90 NEXT I
95 REM **OUTPUT RESULTS**
100 PRINT
110 PRINT "SCORE", "FREQUENCY"
115 REM **DISPLAY LOOP**
120 FOR K=1 TO 6
130 PRINT K, S(K)
140 NEXT K
150 END
RUN

```

Program 18

RESULTS FROM THROWING A DIE 100 TIMES

SCORE	FREQUENCY
1	12
2	20
3	16
4	18
5	16
6	18

READY.

RUN

SCORE	FREQUENCY
1	9
2	20
3	19
4	18
5	14
6	20

READY.

SCORE	FREQUENCY
1	14
2	28
3	17
4	18
5	15
6	8

READY.

RUN

SCORE	FREQUENCY
1	15
2	19
3	18
4	17
5	17
6	14

READY.

Program 18

Exercise 2

```
10 REM **THROW TWO DICE 100 TIMES**
12 PRINT CHR$(147)
14 REM **SPACE FOR SCORE COUNTERS**
15 DIM S(15)
17 PRINT "RESULTS FROM THROWING 2 DICE 100 TIMES"
18 REM **ZEROISE COUNTERS**
20 FOR J=2 TO 12
30 LET S(J)=0
40 NEXT J
50 REM **GENERATION LOOP**
60 FOR I=1 TO 100
70 LET S1=INT(6*RND(1)+1)
75 LET S2=INT(6*RND(1)+1)
80 LET S=S1+S2
82 LET S(S)=S(S)+1
85 REM **END OF LOOP**
90 NEXT I
95 REM **OUTPUT RESULTS**
100 PRINT
110 PRINT "SCORE", "FREQUENCY"
115 REM **DISPLAY LOOP**
120 FOR K=2 TO 12
130 PRINT K, S(K)
140 NEXT K
150 END
```

Program 19

RUN

RESULTS FROM THROWING 2 DICE 100 TIMES

SCORE	FREQUENCY
2	1
3	5
4	10
5	13
6	11
7	19
8	16
9	5
10	10
11	5
12	5

READY.

Program 19

How about 1000 throws? Well, just change 60 to 60 FOR I=1 TO 1000 and change the REM line and you will get a run such as:

```
RUN
RESULTS FROM THROWING 2 DICE 1000 TIMES
SCORE          FREQUENCY
2              31
3              59
4              74
5              118
6              151
7              173
8              118
9              100
10             89
11             61
12             26
READY.
```

Suggestions for further programs

1. How will you cope with printing a frequency diagram for this data, as 151 and 173 . . . would 'want to print' off the end of the line?
2. We need a general 'scaling' routine which adjusts to differing line widths, but makes best use of the full width of the page or screen.

Exercise 3

```
10 REM **FREQUENCY DIAGRAM**
12 PRINT CHR$(147)
14 REM **SPACE FOR SCORE COUNTERS**
15 DIM S(15)
17 PRINT "RESULTS FROM THROWING 2 DICE 100 TIMES**"
18 REM **ZEROISE COUNTERS**
20 FOR J=2 TO 12
30 LET S(J)=0
40 NEXT J
50 REM **GENERATION LOOP**
60 FOR I=1 TO 100
70 LET S1=INT(6*RND(1)+1)
75 LET S2=INT(6*RND(1)+1)
80 LET S1+S2
82 LET S(S)=S(S)+1
85 REM **END OF LOOP**
90 NEXT I
95 REM **OUTPUT RESULTS**
100 PRINT
110 PRINT "FREQUENCY DIAGRAM"
115 PRINT
120 FOR K=2 TO 12
130 PRINT K;TAB(5);S(K);TAB(10);
140 IF S(K)=0 THEN 205
150 FOR L=1 TO S(K)
160 PRINT "*";
```

```

170 NEXT L
180 REM **JUMP TO HERE IF ZERO FREQ**
190 PRINT
200 NEXT K
210 END

```

Program 20

```

RUN
RESULTS FROM THROWING 2 DICE 100 TIMES.
FREQUENCY DIAGRAM

```

2	4	****
3	6	*****
4	6	*****
5	8	*****
6	19	*****
7	21	*****
8	10	*****
9	11	*****
10	8	*****
11	4	****
12	3	***

READY.

Program 20

SAQ 1

The following solution is just one of many possible ways of shortening the program.

```

10 REM **FREQUENCY DIAGRAM**
15 DIM S(15):PRINT CHR$(147)
17 PRINT "RESULTS FROM THROWING 2 DICE 100 TIMES"
20 FOR J=2 TO 12:S(J)=0:Next J
60 FOR I=1 TO 100
70 S1=INT(6*RND(1)+1):S2=INT(6*RND(1)+1)
80 S=S1+S2:S(S)=S(S)+1
90 NEXT I
100 PRINT:PRINT "FREQUENCY DIAGRAM":PRINT
120 FOR K=2 TO 12
130 PRINT K;TAB(5);S(K);TAB(10);
140 IF S(K)=0 THEN 200
150 FOR L=1 TO S(K):PRINT "*";:NEXT L
190 PRINT
200 NEXT K
210 END

```

Program 21

RUN
RESULTS FROM THROWING 2 DICE 100 TIMES
FREQUENCY DIAGRAM

2	4	****
3	3	***
4	3	***
5	18	*****
6	11	*****
7	13	*****
8	11	*****
9	13	*****
10	9	*****
11	11	*****
12	4	****

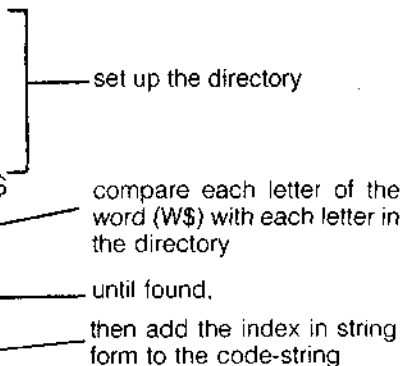
SAQ 6

```
10 REM **PLURALS**
20 LET AS="S"
30 INPUT BS
40 PRINT BS+AS
50 END
```

Program 22

Exercise 4

```
10 REM **SIMPLE CODE**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 DIM AS(26)
40 FOR I=1 TO 26
50 READ AS(I)
60 NEXT I
70 DATA A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J,K,L,M,N,O,P
80 DATA Q,R,S,T,U,V,W,X,Y,Z
100 INPUT "NEXT WORD FOR CODING?" WS
110 L=LEN(WS)
120 FOR J=1 TO L
130 I=1
140 IF MID$(WS,J,1)=AS(I) THEN 200
150 I=I+1
160 GOTO 140
200 CS=CS+STR$(I)+" "
210 NEXT J
220 PRINT:PRINT CS
230 END
```



Program 23

```
RUN
NEXT WORD FOR CODING? COMPUTING
3 15 13 16 21 20 9 14 7
READY.
```

RUN

NEXT WORD FOR CODING? PARLIAMENT

16 1 18 12 9 1 13 5 14 20

READY.

RUN

NEXT WORD FOR CODING? PROFESSIONALS

16 18 15 6 5 19 19 9 15 14 1 12 19

READY.

Program 23

Exercise 5

```
10 REM **RANDOM 3-LETTER WORDS**
20 DIM AS(26)
30 FOR I=1 TO 26:REM **FORM ALPHA-LIST**
40 READ AS(I):NEXT I
50 DATA A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J,K,L,M,N,O,P
60 DATA Q,R,S,T,U,V,W,X,Y,Z
70 PRINT CHR$(147)
80 INPUT"ANOTHER LIST?" RS
90 IF RS<>"YES" THEN 190
100 FOR K=1 TO 20:REM **20 WORDS**
110 WS="":REM **WORD—STRING EMPTY TO START**
120 FOR J=1 TO 3:REM **START OF A WORD**
130 X=END(26)
140 WS=WS+AS(X)
150 NEXT J:REM**END OF A WORD**
160 PRINT WS:REM **PRINT THE WORD**
170 NEXT K:REM **GO BACK FOR NEXT WORD**
180 GOTO 80
190 END
```

Program 24

PDY
XNM
HPI
EVW
EFT
KZT
IGM
KWL
QHW
AIY
ZBQ
MSH
FFA
ZYJ
BBX
JPT

FSV
BPG
GNR
EEP

How many times must you run to get a 'proper' word?

Program 24.

UNIT 7

Graphics, sound and colour

7.1	Introduction	174
7.2	Colour: border	174
7.3	Colour: paper	175
7.4	Colour: ink	175
7.5	Direct colour display with POKE	178
7.6	Coloured light	179
7.7	Moving graphics	182
7.8	Drawing flags	188
7.9	Sprite graphics	189
7.10	Sound in programs	190
7.11	Sound effects in programs	195
	Assignment 7	196
	Objectives of Unit 7	196
	Answers to SAQ's and Exercises	196

7.1 Introduction

So far, we have only used the Commodore 64 to handle numbers and text, in the standard screen colours, light blue on dark blue, to get a sound grounding in the BASIC language. However, the most exciting uses of a microcomputer such as the Commodore 64 involve using a full range of colours in screen displays, using graphics (picture displays), and in adding sound.

Obviously, arcade-type games are more enjoyable in colour, and with suitable sounds generated when 'invaders' or 'starships' are destroyed. But graphs and educational programs, for instance, are also clearer and easier to use with the judicious use of colour and, when appropriate, sound.

7.2 Colour: border

There are three main areas of the screen display which may be output in colour. The first of these is the border of the screen. You will have seen this area when you first switch the computer on, coloured light blue.

The Commodore 64 uses the BASIC instruction POKE to input colour control codes directly to the computer. The instruction takes the form

POKE memory location, control code

Memory location 53280 controls the colour of the screen border. If you RUN the following program you will be able to see the effect of 'POKE'ing this store area.

```
10 REM *****
20 REM ** BORDER COLOURS **
30 REM *****
40 PRINT CHR$(147)
50 FOR X=0 TO 15
60 POKE 53280,X
70 FOR Z=1 TO 500
80 NEXT Z
90 REM ** PAUSE TO SLOW PROGRAM
100 REM ENOUGH TO SEE EACH
110 REM COLOUR DISPLAYED.**
120 NEXT X
130 END
```

Program 1 Border colours

Program 1.

The FOR . . . NEXT . . . loop in lines 70 and 80 slows down the output display sufficiently to allow you to see the border colours cycled. Without these two lines, the rate of change of the borders is too rapid to be seen properly. Although the FOR . . . NEXT . . . loop contains no processing instructions, it takes the computer a short period of time to count up to the limit number, which slows down the computer sufficiently.

You will have seen the border area of the screen cycle through sixteen colours: in order; black, white, red, cyan, purple, green, blue, yellow, orange, brown, light red, grey 1, grey 2, light green, light blue and grey 3. These colours are referred to by the

numbers 0 to 15 inclusive.

As an exercise, why not use

POKE 53280, colour number

to add a coloured border to some of the programs you have already keyed in as part of the course?

0	black	8	orange
1	white	9	brown
2	red	10	light red
3	cyan	11	grey 1
4	purple	12	grey 2
5	green	13	light green
6	blue	14	light blue
7	yellow	15	grey 3

To return from a coloured display to the usual light blue/dark blue screen, hold down RUN STOP and touch RESTORE.

7.3 Colour: paper

The main part of the screen display, inside the border, is called the background, or the paper. This is the area upon which you have seen your programs listed, and your results displayed. The colour is controlled by POKEing the number of the required number to the memory location 53281.

This program prints the screen in each of the sixteen available colours, in turn.

```
10 REM *****
20 REM ** PAPER COLOURS **
30 REM *****
40 PRINT CHR$(147)
50 FOR X=0 TO 15
60 POKE 53281,X
70 FOR Z=1 TO 500
80 NEXT Z
90 NEXT X
100 END
```

Program 2 Paper colours

Program 2.

The Commodore 64 can change screen colour without needing to clear the screen beforehand.

7.4 Colour: ink

Just as the background colour of the screen can be referred to as the paper, the colour of the characters printed onto the screen is referred to as the ink. Another name is the foreground. Until this unit we have used light blue ink on dark blue paper:

these are the default values — that is to say, the colours provided when the computer program is first turned on, or when the existing program is wiped from memory with the NEW function, or RUN STOP/RESTORE.

To begin with, we will look at producing colours with the

PRINT CHR\$(code number)

instruction. As we saw at the end of Unit 3, this BASIC instruction can be used to print out any ASCII character available on the Commodore 64. Appendix F of your User Manual shows what each character code means. The colour codes are dotted about in spare places in the code.

ASCII code	Colour
5	White
28	Red
30	Green
31	Blue
144	Black
156	Purple
158	Yellow
159	Cyan

Only the eight colours shown on the Commodore keyboard are available in this way.

This program prints coloured stripes onto the screen:

```
10 REM *****
20 REM ** COLOURED STRIPES **
30 REM *****
40 PRINT CHR$(147)
50 FOR X=0 TO 7
60 READ CL
65 PRINT CHR$(CL)
70 PRINT CHR$(18)
80 FOR Y=1 TO 40
100 PRINT CHR$(160);
110 NEXT Y
120 NEXT X
130 END
140 DATA 5,28,30,31,156,158,159,144
```

Program 3 Coloured stripes

[K] Program 3

Line 70 uses ASCII character code 18 (RVSON) — this prints out the 40 spaces which make up a line (ASCII character code 160) in reverse graphics, so that the effect is to print a solid bar of the required colour.

We can also print coloured characters on the coloured bars.

```
10 REM *****
20 REM ** COLOURED MESSAGES **
30 REM *****
40 PRINT CHR$(147)
50 FOR Y=1 TO 3
60 FOR X=0 TO 7
70 READ CL
```

```

80 PRINT CHR$(CL);
90 PRINT "HELLO TO OUR COMMODORE 64 PROGRAMMERS"
100 NEXT X
110 RESTORE
120 NEXT Y
130 GOTO 130
140 DATE 5,28,30,31,156,158,159,144

```

Program 4 Coloured messages

[K] Program 4.

You will see from running this program that some combinations of ink and paper are easier to read than others. Worse still, without a colour monitor, there can be a loss of picture quality with some colour combinations, which makes the letters hard to read. It is, therefore, important to choose colour combinations wisely and sparingly. You will soon discover which combinations of colours suit your displays best, by trial and error.

You will also need to bear in mind that, if you hope to produce programs for use by other people, not everyone will be using a coloured display screen. Colour combinations of ink and paper need to have equally good contrast in black and white. For instance, blue and red, in solid blocks, are clearly distinguishable in colour, but have poor contrast in black and white, being close to each other in the contrast scale.

Example 1

Use the method of Program 3 to produce a six-colour rainbow. We cannot produce a seven-colour rainbow by this method, as we need orange, which is not available. Our 'rainbow' will look best on a dark background, so we set our screen border and paper to black (colour 0).

```

50 POKE 53281,0
60 POKE 53280,0

```

Otherwise, the method can be exactly as per Program 3. We have six coloured stripes, so we set up our controlling FOR . . . NEXT . . . loop

```

70 FOR X=1 TO 6
160 NEXT X

```

The screen is 25 lines deep, so we can fit in six stripes of four lines (total 24 lines). To print out each coloured bar four times, we use a nested FOR . . . NEXT . . . loop:

```

100 FOR Z=1 TO 4
150 NEXT Z

```

The order of the colours we need is:

red yellow green light blue indigo violet.

The nearest we can manage is:

red yellow green cyan blue purple

So our DATA statement will be

```

180 DATA 28,158,30,159,31,156

```

We can now fit in the rest of the program thus:

```
10 REM *****
20 REM ** 6-COLOUR RAINBOW **
30 REM *****
40 PRINT CHR$(147)
50 POKE 53281,0
60 POKE 53280,0
70 FOR X=1 TO 6
80 READ CL
90 PRINT CHR$(CL);
100 FOR Z=1 TO 4
110 PRINT CHR$(18);
120 FOR Y=1 TO 40
130 PRINT CHR$(160);
140 NEXT Y
150 NEXT Z
160 NEXT X
170 GOTO 170
180 DATA 28,158,30,159,31,156
```

Program 5 6-colour rainbow

Program 5.

Line 170 is to prevent the display being spoilt by a 'Ready' message. Touch RUN STOP to stop the program.

7.5 Direct colour display with POKE

The screen display of the Commodore 64 is controlled by a block of 1000 store locations from 1024 to 2023. The screen display is 40 characters wide and 25 lines deep. ($40 \times 25 = 1000$).

The locations are laid out in a grid pattern (see Appendix G of your User Manual).

The colour of the 1000 possible character locations in the screen display is controlled by another block of memory, starting at 55296, going up to 56295, also shown in Appendix G of the User Manual.

Try the enhanced rainbow program

```
10 REM *****
20 REM ** 7-COLOUR RAINBOW **
30 REM *****
40 PRINT CHR$(147)
50 POKE 53280,0
60 POKE 53281,0
70 FOR X=1024 TO 2023
80 POKE X,160
90 NEXT X
100 FOR C=0 TO 6
110 READ CL
120 FOR X=55296+120*C TO 55415+120*C
```

```

130 POKE X,CL
140 NEXT X
150 NEXT C
160 GOTO 160
170 DATA 2,8,7,5,14,6,4

```

Program 6 7-colour rainbow

▣ Program 6.

As before, lines 50 and 60 made the screen and border black. Lines 70 and 90 put the space character (ASCII 160) into all display locations.

The main processing loop is in lines 100 to 150. Line 120 refers to the Colour Memory Map. It causes groups of three adjacent screen lines to be coloured in. ($3 \times 7 = 21$, which fits into the 25 line screen display).

The data (line 170) uses the colour codes, which are 2 (red), 8 (orange), 7 (yellow), 5 (green), 14 (light blue), 6 (blue), 4 (purple).

If line 120 seems strange, try dry running the program. When C is 0, the first bar is from 55296 to 55415. when C is 1, the second bar is 55416 to 55535 and so on.

7.6 Coloured light

Now that we know how the Commodore 64 deals with colour, let us see how a colour television or monitor produces the colours we want. RUN program 7, Coloured light, and you will have a visual demonstration of the explanation that is to follow:

```

10 REM *****
20 REM ** COLOURED LIGHT **
30 REM *****
40 POKE 53280,0
50 POKE 53281,0
60 PRINT CHR$(147)
70 REM *****
80 FOR X=1024 TO 2023
90 POKE X,160
100 NEXT X
110 REM *****
120 PRINT "      MIXING COLOURED LIGHT"
130 REM ** MAKING UP THE SPOTLIGHTS **
140 FOR X=0 TO 15
150 FOR Y=55508+40*X TO 55523+40*X
160 READ C
170 POKE Y,C
180 NEXT Y
190 NEXT X
200 GOTO 200
210 DATA 2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,0,0,0,0,0,0
220 DATA 2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,0,0,0,0,0,0
230 DATA 2,2,2,2,2,7,7,7,7,5,5,5,5,5,5
240 DATA 2,2,2,2,2,7,7,7,7,5,5,5,5,5,5
250 DATA 2,2,2,2,2,7,7,7,7,5,5,5,5,5,5

```


$10 \times 5 = 55$

WRONG—TRY AGAIN

RUN: correct answer given after three incorrect attempts

$9 \times 6 = 54$

THIS IS THE CORRECT ANSWER

RUN: display of score/re-run instructions

YOUR SCORE IS 8 OUT OF 10

FOR ANOTHER GO:

TYPE RUN

THEN TOUCH THE RETURN KEY

The tables testing program gives a set of randomly generated times tables questions, in the range of 0×0 to 12×12 . If the wrong answer is keyed in, another chance is given. After three wrong answers to one question, the correct answer is displayed. It is quite a good user-friendly program, but it could be enhanced with the use of colour.

Firstly, let us add a coloured border to the screen.

```
15 POKE 53280,5
```

which will give a green border. The following lines;

```
311 FOR Y=1 TO 20
```

```
312 POKE 53280,2
```

```
313 FOR Z=1 TO 100
```

```
314 NEXT Z
```

```
315 POKE 53280,6
```

```
316 FOR Z=1 TO 100
```

```
317 NEXT Z
```

```
318 NEXT Y
```

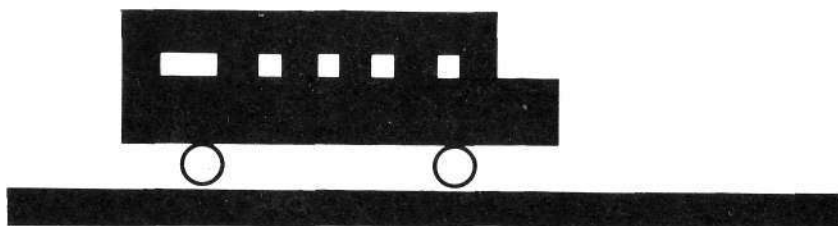
cycle the colours in the border, alternatively blue and red, twenty times, to highlight the score output. Now RUN the program and see if you think this modest addition of colour improves the program, or not. Whether or not you think it does, now experiment with the program yourself, to see which colours make good displays.

We shall come back to this program later in the Unit, when dealing with sound in programs.

Your programs will be more attractive, if the colour is applied to graphics — that is to say, pictures on the display screen — especially moving graphics.

7.7. Moving graphics

Let us follow an example of how to produce simple moving graphics. The picture, or graphics symbols, on the Commodore 64 are shown on the front of the relevant keys, and are accessed via the SHIFT, CTRL and 'Commodore Logo' keys in conjunction with the ordinary keys.



A typical picture of the bus, whilst moving. The body of the bus will be drawn in red.

The principles we have shown in this example will enable you to draw and colour your own pictures. Now experiment with the graphics symbols, to make your own moving pictures. Don't forget to use the expanding blank line (line 130) at the left-hand side of each line of the picture, so that the picture will rub out its 'tail' as it moves.

We shall come back to our bus, to add sound, later on in this unit.

Example 4: Drawing with blobs

The GET function allows the computer user to input single key strokes without having to touch RETURN after the key had been touched. When GET is being used, it is usually necessary to make the program check each key that is being pressed and to respond immediately. The 'response' will be of one of three types:

- Perform the appropriate action for that key as defined by that program
- one error message such as 'key not valid at this time—please re-enter'
- or, for all invalid keys, simply do nothing but loop back and wait for a valid key to be pressed.

In program 11, only the keys 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 are valid. If any other key is pressed, no action results. All that happens is that line 190 re-directs the program back to line 55 to await a valid key press.

This program uses the 5 key to move left, 6 to move down, 7 to move up, 8 to move right, and 9 to change colour. There is nothing stopping you from using other keys for these functions. The lines 100, 120, 140 and 160 deal with the cases when the blob drawn in lines 55 and 60 reaches the edge of the screen. Every line that you touch key 9, the colour is changed. If colour 15 (grey 3) is reached, the colour then steps back to 0 (black), because of line 180.

The blob isn't rubbed out after it moves, so this program enables you to draw your own picture. If you draw in the same colour as the screen colour you can in effect, rub out'. As the Commodore 64 doesn't have an automatic repeat function if you hold down a key, it is necessary to touch and release the relevant key each time you wish to move the blob.

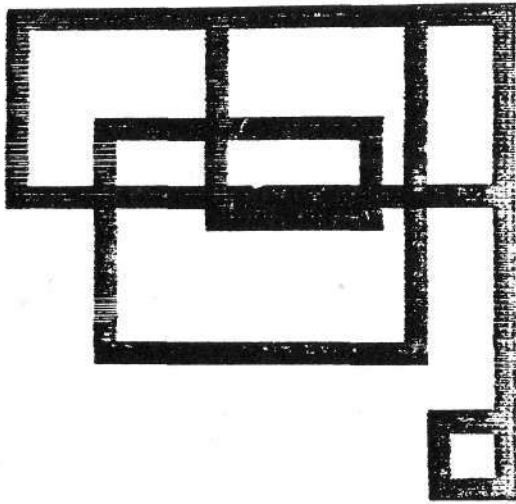
```
10 REM ** DRAWING PROGRAM**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 LET R=0
40 LET C=0
50 LET CL=0
55 POKE 55296+C+R*40,CL
60 POKE 1024+C+R*40,160
70 GET AS
80 IF AS="" THEN GOTO 70
90 IF AS="5" THEN LET C=C-1
```

```
100 IF C<=0 THEN LET C=0
110 IF A$="6" THEN LET R=R+1
120 IF R>=24 THEN LET R=24
130 IF A$="7" THEN LET R=R-1
140 IF R<=0 THEN R=0
150 IF A$="8" THEN LET C=C+1
160 IF C>=39 THEN LET C=39
170 IF A$="9" THEN LET CL=CL+1
180 IF CL>=16 THEN LET CL=0
190 GOTO 55
```

Program 11 Drawing with a blob

Program 11.

A typical RUN.



If you change the code for a space (160) in line 60 for another character, you can add variety to your drawings, too. Lines 55 and 60 refer back to the screen map and colour map; C is the column number (0 to 39) and R is the row number (0 to 24).

Example 5: Move a blob

It is beyond the scope of this course to develop a complex game, such as the one of the space pursuit games, because of the higher level programming skills needed. However, this program developed from Example 4 above, shows how full two-dimensional motion of a spacecraft picture, for example, can be produced. See how it differs from Program 11, to enable the blob to rub out its 'tail' behind it. This is simply done by clearing the screen before going back to draw the next position.

```
10 REM ** MOVING DOT PROGRAM **
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 LET R=0
40 LET C=0
50 LET CL=0
55 POKE 55296+C+R*40,CL
60 POKE 1024+C+R*40,160
70 GET AS
80 IF AS="" THEN GOTO 55
90 IF AS="5" THEN LET C=C-1
100 IF C<=0 THEN LET C=0
110 IF AS="6" THEN LET R=R+1
120 IF R>=24 THEN LET R=24
130 IF AS="7" THEN LET R=R-1
140 IF R<=0 THEN R=0
150 IF AS="8" THEN LET C=C+1
160 IF C>=39 THEN LET C=39
170 IF AS="9" THEN LET CL=CL+1
180 IF CL>=16 THEN LET CL=0
190 PRINT CHR$(147)
200 GOTO 55
```

Program 12 Moving blob

Program 12.

RUN program 12, and see how you can move the blob to any point within the designated area of the screen, using the 5, 6, 7 and 8 keys. The 9 key allows you to change colour.

7.8 Drawing flags.

The following program draws the French flag, in full colour. The flag consists of three vertical stripes: from left to right these are blue, white and then red. The border is set to 0 (black), for contrast, and then the loop from 100 to 180 builds up the flag, from the top to the bottom, filling in one row of character positions at a time; Line 100 is

100 FOR R=0 TO 24

as we have 25 lines in the flag. Line 110 is

```
110 FOR C=0 TO 2
```

as we have three stripes in the flag. Line 130 builds up one horizontal line of the flag, at a time. As the three colours are repeated in each line of the flag, we need the RESTORE at line 170 to save having to repeat the data for each line.

```
10 REM *****
20 REM ** VERTICAL TRICOLORE **
30 REM *****
40 POKE 53280,0
50 POKE 53281,0
60 PRINT CHR$(147)
70 FOR X=1024 TO 2023
80 POKE X,160
90 NEXT X
100 FOR R=0 TO 24
110 FOR C=0 TO 2
120 READ CL
130 FOR X=55296+13*C+40*R TO 55309+13*C+40*R
140 POKE X,CL
150 NEXT X
160 NEXT C
170 RESTORE
180 NEXT R
190 GOTO 190
200 DATA 6,1,2
```

Program 13 Vertical tricolore flag

Program 13.

RUN the program.

SAQ 2

1. Convert Program 13 to draw the Belgian flag (black/yellow/red vertical stripes). (You will need to alter the border colour, as one of the flag stripes is black.)
2. Convert Program 13 to draw the Italian flag (green/white/red vertical stripes).

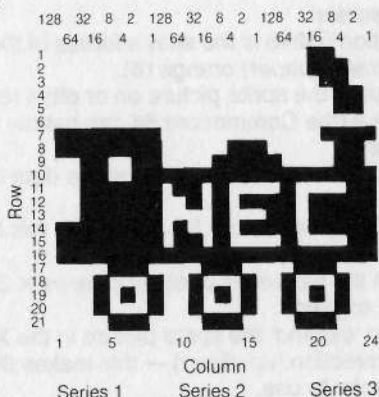
Exercise 1

We have shown how to draw a flag made of three vertical stripes; try to write a program to draw a flag made up of three horizontal stripes — the Dutch flag would be a good example to try. The top stripes is red, the middle stripe is white, and the bottom stripe is blue.

7.9 Sprite graphics

It is beyond the scope of this course to go into details of how to define your own high-resolution (detailed) graphics display. It will suffice to work through an example.

In the following picture,



we have a grid of 24 columns and 21 rows, from which we can build up our detailed picture. The grid is divided into three vertical sections, called Series 1, 2 and 3, respectively. Each column is numbered in powers of 2 (1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64 and 128), from right to left, within its series. Using this pattern we can build up a picture, such as the 'National Extension College' train shown above.

```
10 REM ** HIGH-RES TRAIN **
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 LET HR=53248
40 POKE 53281,8
50 POKE HR+21,4
60 POKE 2042,13
70 POKE HR+41,2
80 FOR T=0 TO 62
90 READ D
100 POKE 832+T,D
110 NEXT T
120 POKE HR+23,4
130 POKE HR+29,4
140 REM ** MOVE TRAIN SPRITE **
150 FOR C=0 TO 200
160 POKE HR+4,C
170 POKE HR+5,150
180 NEXT C
190 GOTO 140
200 DATA 0,0,24,0,0,28,0,0,12,0,0,6,0,0,6,0,0,0
210 DATA 255,0,15,255,7,6,51,15,134
220 DATA 51,255,255,63,104,67,63,43,223
230 DATA 63,8,223,255,75,223,255,104,67
240 DATA 255,255,255,14,28,56,17,34,68
250 DATA 21,42,84,17,34,68,14,28,56
```

Program 14.

Program 14 Sprite train

The data in lines 200 to 250 describe the train drawing in order of rows 1 to 21, going across the series 1 to 3 with each row.

The data number for each series in each row is obtained by adding up the numbers for each square that is coloured in.

- Line 20 Clearing the screen.
- 30 Memory location 53248 is the start address of the display chip control.
- 40 Colour the screen (paper) orange (8).
- 50 Register 21 turns the sprite picture on or off; 4 (binary 100) means turn on Sprite 2 (the Commodore 64 can handle 8 sprite levels simultaneously).
- 60 tells the computer where to read the sprite data from. 2042 deals with Sprite 2.
- 70 Register 41 deals with colour for Sprite 2 — this line makes the drawing red (Colour 2)
- 80 to 100 read in the 62 pieces of data (21 rows × 3 series) and store it in locations 832 onwards.
- 120 and 130 mean 'expand' the sprite picture in the X-direction (left-right) and in the Y-direction (up-down) — this makes the sprite picture bigger and easier to use.
- 150 to 80 move the sprite picture; 160 moves it from left to right — 170 keeps the picture on the same level in the Y-direction, as a train doesn't go up in the air!

Now RUN program 14. You will see the train move across the screen, from left to right. If you draw a picture on squared paper, as the train picture was drawn, and then turn it into data, you will be able to use program 14 to animate your own sprite picture.

7.10 Sound in programs

The Commodore 64 has a very versatile sound generation capability, ranging from simple tunes and sound effects to complex harmonies. The sound is played through the loudspeaker of the television used as a display screen. See Chapter 7 of your User Manual for data tables.

As with the sprite graphic instructions for the Commodore 64, the full sound instructions are very complicated. We shall only deal with one of the three available voices. For each note that is played, we need to instruct the computer about the volume of the note, how quickly the note rises to and falls from its highest volume level, the waveform (type of sound produced), how long the note is to be held on (sustained), the length of the note, and two values called the high and the low frequency for the note. Each of these items is controlled by a POKE to a numbered memory location. In our programs we shall give meaningful names to these memory locations, to make the listing a little easier to follow.

We shall stick to VOICE 1. In this case, volume is controlled by location 54296, waveform by location 54276, attack/decay by location 54277, sustaining the note by location 54278, and the low frequency, 54272, high frequency 54273.

In line 90, we have set the volume (VOL) to the maximum level, of 15. We have chosen a triangular waveform in line 100. Line 110 sets the attack to 128, and the decay to 1. (Which is a high attack and the lowest decay). Line 120 sets the sustain value to a medium setting.

The dummy loop in line 130 and 140 sets the length of the note. The larger the number at the end of line 130, the longer the note. In lines 150 and 160 we read in the high/low frequency values for the notes we need. These are found in Appendix M of your User Manual. Line 170 checks to see if all data has been read in.

The data is the scale of C, in octave 4.

```
10 REM ** PLAY A SCALE **
20 REM ****
30 LET VOL=54296
40 LET WAV=54276
50 LET ATD=54277
60 LET LFRQ=54272
70 LET HFRQ=54273
80 LET SUS=54278
90 POKE VOL,15
100 POKE WAV,17
110 POKE ATD,129
120 POKE SUS,64
130 FOR D=1 TO 250
140 NEXT D
150 READ H
160 READ L
170 IF H<0 THEN GOTO 220
180 POKE LFRQ,L
190 POKE HFRQ,H
200 POKE WAV,0
210 GOTO 100
220 REM **END**
230 POKE LFRQ,0
240 POKE HFRQ,0
250 END
260 REM ** SCALE C OCTAVE 4 **
270 DATA 17,37
280 DATA 19,63
290 DATA 21,154
300 DATA 22,227
310 DATA 25,177
320 DATA 28,214
330 DATA 32,94
340 DATA 34,75
350 DATA -1,-1
```

Program 15 Scale of C

Program 15.

Turn up the sound on your television set, and RUN program 15. The scale of C goes C—D—E—F—G—A—B—C'.

Exercise 2

Try to write the data to play the scale of G in the 4th octave, using program 15.

Suggestion

The scale of G goes G—A—B—C—D—E—F#—G'; use the notes table in Appendix M of your User Manual to find the high frequency and low frequency values.

Now, let us play a tune. We need to be able to change the lengths of the notes, and we do this by altering the length of the dummy loop which counts whilst the note is playing. This now means that, even for a tune where we keep volume, attack/decay and sustaining constant, we still need three data items — high frequency number, low frequency number, and duration. In the next program, we have used 200 to be a crotchet, so 100 will be a quaver, and 400 a minim.

We can speed up to music by changing line 190 to, for instance,

```
190 FOR T=1 TO D/2
```

or slow it down:

```
190 FOR T=1 TO D*2
```

which can be useful, if we want the music to be slow enough to check through for mistakes.

```
10 REM **LONDON'S BURNING**
20 REM ****
30 LET VOL=54296
40 LET WAV=54276
50 LET ATD=54277
60 LET LFRQ=54272
70 LET HFRQ=54273
80 LET SUS=54278
90 POKE VOL,15
100 POKE WAV,17
110 POKE ATD,68
120 POKE SYS,128
130 READ H
140 READ L
150 READ D
160 IF H<0 THEN GOTO 240
170 POKE LFRQ,L
180 POKE HFRQ,H
190 FOR T=1 TO D
200 NEXT T
210 POKE LFRQ,0
220 POKE HFRQ,0
230 GOTO 130
240 END
250 REM **LONDON'S BURNING**
260 REM ** HI/LO/DURATION **
270 DATA 19,63,100
280 DATA 19,63,100
290 DATA 25,177,200
300 DATA 25,177,200
310 DATA 19,63,100
320 DATA 19,63,100
330 DATA 25,177,200
340 DATA 25,177,200
350 DATA 28,214,100
360 DATA 28,214,100
390 DATA 32,94,200
400 DATA 32,94,200
410 DATA 28,314,100
```

420 DATA 28,214,100
430 DATA 32,94,200
440 DATA 32,94,200
450 DATA 38,126,200
460 DATA 38,126,400
470 DATA 38,126,200
480 DATA 38,126,400
490 DATA 38,126,100
500 DATA 34,75,100
510 DATA 32,94,200
520 DATA 32,94,200
530 DATA 38,126,100
540 DATA 34,75,100
550 DATA 32,94,200
560 DATA 32,94,200
570 DATA -1,-1,-1

Program 16 London's Burning

Program 16.

10 REM ** DARBY KELLY **
20 REM ****
30 LET VOL=54296
40 LET WAV=54276
50 LET ATD=54277
60 LET LFRQ=54272
70 LET HFRQ=54273
80 LET SUS=54278
90 POKE VOL,15
100 POKE WAV,33
110 POKE ATD,136
120 POKE SUS,128
130 READ H
140 READ L
150 READ D
160 IF H<0 THEN GOTO 240
170 POKE LFRQ,L
180 POKE HFRQ,H
190 FOR T=1 TO D
200 NEXT T
210 POKE LFRQ,0
220 POKE HFRQ,0
230 GOTO 130
240 END
250 REM ***DARBY KELLY **
260 REM ** HI/LO/DURATION **
270 DATA 19,63,120,25,177,240
280 DATA 32,94,120,32,94,240
290 DATA 19,63,120,25,177,240
300 DATA 32,94,120,32,94,240
310 DATA 19,63,120,25,177,240
320 DATA 32,94,120,32,94,80
330 DATA 28,214,80,32,94,80

340 DATA 34,75,240,28,214,120
350 DATA 28,214,240,19,63,120
360 DATA 25,177,240,32,94,120
390 DATA 32,94,80,28,214,80
400 DATA 25,177,80,21,154,240
410 DATA 34,75,120,34,75,240
420 DATA 21,154,120,19,63,240
430 DATA 32,94,120,32,94,240
440 DATA 28,214,120,28,214,240
450 DATA 25,177,120,25,177,240
460 DATA 32,94,120,28,214,240
470 DATA 19,63,120,19,63,240
480 DATA 32,94,120,28,214,240
490 DATA 19,63,120,19,63,240
500 DATA 32,94,120,28,214,240
510 DATA 38,126,120,38,126,80
520 DATA 36,85,80,38,126,80
530 DATA 38,126,240,19,63,120
540 DATA 19,63,960,34,75,120
550 DATA 32,94,240,28,214,120
560 DATA 25,177,240,24,63,120
570 DATA 21,154,240,25,177,120
580 DATA 25,177,80,21,154,80
590 DATA 21,154,80,19,63,240
600 DATA 32,94,120,32,94,240
610 DATA 28,214,120,28,214,240
620 DATA 25,177,120,25,177,240
630 DATA 32,94,120,28,214,240
640 DATA 19,63,120,19,63,240
650 DATA 32,94,120,28,214,240
660 DATA 19,63,120,19,63,240
670 DATA 32,94,120,28,214,240
680 DATA 38,126,120,38,126,80
690 DATA 36,85,80,38,126,80
700 DATA 38,126,240,19,63,120
710 DATA 19,63,960,34,75,120
720 DATA 32,94,240,28,214,120
730 DATA 25,177,240,24,63,120
740 DATA 21,154,240,25,277,120
750 DATA 25,177,80,24,63,80
760 DATA 21,154,80,19,63,240
770 DATA 32,94,120,32,94,240
780 DATA 28,214,120,28,214,240
790 DATA 25,177,120,25,177,120
800 DATA -1,-1,-1

Program 17 Darby Kelly

[K] Program 17.

If you run this program. You will see that quite complex tunes can be played on the Commodore 64, even with only one voice in use. If you are well-versed with musical theory, you should find no difficulty in writing music programs. If not, a book of simple tunes, such as those written for children learning to play the recorder, would give

suitable tunes to start with. Write the name of each note (A,B,C, etc) under each note on the piece of music, and then refer to the note chart at Appendix M of your User Manual, for the high and low frequency numbers. Decide what value your 'standard' note will be worth (e.g. 100 for a crotchet), and then work out what each note in your tune is worth.

7.11 Sound effects in programs

As well as providing proper music, the Commodore 64 can produce a wide range of sound effects in programs. You may be familiar with the 'explosions' and 'flying saucer' noises on arcade type games commercially available.

Let us return to our old friend, the moving bus. The following program has lines 161 to 168 added, to provide a two-tune sound. This slows down the program, so the delay lines (150 and 160) are no longer needed.

```

10 REM ★★★★★★★★★★
20 REM ★★MOVING BUS★★
30 REM ★★★★★★★★★★
40 LET BS(1)="□□□□□□□□"
50 LET BS(2)="□□"
60 LET BS(3)="■ O O"
70 LET CS=" "
72 POKE 54296,15
73 POKE 54276,17
74 POKE 54277,129
75 POKE 54278,128
80 FOR M=1 TO 32
90 PRINT "□□□□□□"
100 PRINT "-----"
110 PRINT "□□□□□"
120 FOR K=1 TO 3
130 PRINT LEFT$(CS,M);BS(K)
140 NEXT K
161 POKE 54273,34
162 POKE 54272,75
163 FOR T=1 TO 40
164 NEXT T
165 POKE 54273,17
166 POKE 54272,37
167 FOR T=1 TO 40
168 NEXT T
170 NEXT M
180 PRINT "□"

```

Program 18 Bus with sound

Program 18.

The program plays C—5 then C—4 alternately, as the bus moves along, providing a quiet sort of 'engine' noise.

SAQ 3

Alter program 18 to give a red border, yellow paper, and a green bus.

Assignment 7

1. Take program 8, Tables Test, and add suitable sound effects to the colour version:
 - (a) to accompany the initial instructions.
 - (b) to accompany correct answers
 - (c) to accompany incorrect answers.
 - (d) to accompany the final score/re-run instructions.

Guidance if required: first establish exactly where in the program each of the above four functions takes place, then decide a suitable sound effect to add (e.g. a rising scale for good things, a descending scale for bad things, etc).

2. Choose a simple flag (other than one of the two designs already covered in this unit) and write a program to draw it, in full colour. Send a description or colour picture of the flag with your program to your tutor.

Objectives of Unit 7

When you have finished this unit check that you are able to:

- Change the screen border colour
- Change the screen paper colour
- Change the screen ink colour
- Describe how coloured lights combine to make other colours
- Add colour to programs to improve their outputs
- Produce simple moving graphics
- Use a program with sprite graphics
- Play tunes
- Add sound effects

Answers to SAQs and Exercises

SAQ 1

- (a) yellow border
- (b) red paper
- (c) purple ink

SAQ 2

1. Belgian flag
alterations to program 13:
 - 40 POKE 53280,1
 - 50 POKE 53281,1
 - 200 DATA 0,7,2

2. Italian flag

alterations to program 13:

200 DATA 5,1,2

(40 and 50 are alright, as black)

Exercise 1

Horizontal tricolore flag.

```
10 REM *****
20 REM ** HORIZONTAL TRICOLORE **
30 REM *****
40 POKE 53280,0
50 POKE 53281,0
60 PRINT CHR$(147)
70 FOR X=1024 TO 2023
80 POKE X,160
90 NEXT X
100 FOR C=0 TO 2
110 READ CL
120 FOR X=55296+320*C TO 55615+320*C
130 POKE X,CL
140 NEXT X
150 NEXT C
160 GOTO 160
170 DATA 2,1,6
```

Program 19 Horizontal tricolore flag

Program 19

Exercise 2

Musical scale — G (octave 4)

```
10 REM **PLAY A SCALE**
20 REM *****
30 LET VOL=54296
40 LET WAV=54276
50 LET ATD=54277
60 LET LFRQ=54272
70 LET HFRQ=54273
80 LET SUS=54278
90 POKE VOL,15
100 POKE WAV,15
110 POKE ATD,29
120 POKE SUS,64
130 FOR D=1 TO 250
140 NEXT D
150 READ H
160 READ L
170 IF H<0 THEN GOTO 220
180 POKE LFRQ,L
190 POKE HFRQ,H
200 POKE WAV,0
210 GOTO 100
```

```
220 REM ***END***
230 POKE LFRQ,0
240 POKE HFRQ,0
250 END
260 REM ** SCALE G OCTAVE 4 **
270 DATA 25,177
280 DATA 28,214
290 DATA 32,94
300 DATA 34,75
310 DATA 38,126
320 DATA 43,52
330 DATA 48,127
340 DATA 51,97
350 DATA -1,-1
```

Program 20 Scale of G

Program 20.

SAQ 3

Alterations to the BUS program (program 18)

lines 40 and 50 — first item in quotes should be CTRL/6 (shows up as)

add 35 POKE 53280,2 for a red border, and

36 POKE 53281,7 for yellow paper.

UNIT 8

Handling numbers

8.1	Introduction	200
8.2	Averages and the arithmetic mean	200
8.3	Range	203
8.4	Number crunching	206
8.5	Dry running	209
8.6	The representation of numbers	211
8.7	The INT-function for rounding	214
8.8	The ABS-function	215
8.9	Iteration	215
	Assignment 8	220
	Objectives of Unit 8	220
	Answers to SAQ's and Exercises	220

8.1 Introduction

We have demonstrated that computers are not just number crunchers but in this Unit we take a closer look at their arithmetic capacity. We concentrate on fairly straight-forward arithmetic, so don't worry about finding it difficult. We're sure that you will be able to cope. We shall continue the 'let's see what happens if approach', and 'let's get the machine to tell us what is going on'. We hope that you will adopt the same approach with the machine that you use.

8.2 Averages and the arithmetic mean

'How long have you been taking over each Unit of the course, so far?' 'Well, on average, about 3 hours.' If we asked you how long it took you to complete a regular journey, such as going to work, you would answer in a similar manner. Sports enthusiasts use the terms goal average, and batting average, atlases abound with pictures of average rainfalls for the months of the year. We talk of average mark in a test or average age of a group of people, etc.

If we wished to calculate the average or arithmetic mean of the ages of a particular group, we would add up the ages for all of the members of the group and divide that sum by the total number of people in the group. To find the arithmetic mean then involves: adding up, counting and then dividing the sum by the count.

Example 1

Find the arithmetic mean of the following set of numbers:

6,7,2,5,4,4,9,8.

Solution

Their sum = $6+7+2+5+4+4+9+8 = 45$.

There are 8 numbers.

So their arithmetic mean = $45/8 = 5.625$.

SAQ 1

Find the arithmetic mean of the following set of numbers:

8,4,2,6,1,7,6,1,4.

Arithmetic mean

Example 2

Devise an algorithm and write a program to find the arithmetic mean of the numbers stored in these DATA statements as follows:

900 DATA 56,47,52,65,24,34,59,37,49,66

910 DATA 38,24,62,76,31,47,66,61,74,45

920 DATA 66,44,55,67,36,56,54,54,50,43

930 DATA 18,83,23,79,29,-9999

Solution

We will express the algorithm first of all in descriptive form.

1. Start.
2. Set counter to 1.

3. Set sum to 0.
4. Input the next mark.
5. If mark = -9999 then go to 9 otherwise carry on to 6.
6. Add mark to sum.
7. Add 1 to counter.
8. Go to 4.
9. Set total to counter-1.
10. Calculate average = sum/total.
11. Output average.

Figure 1 Descriptive algorithm for arithmetic mean

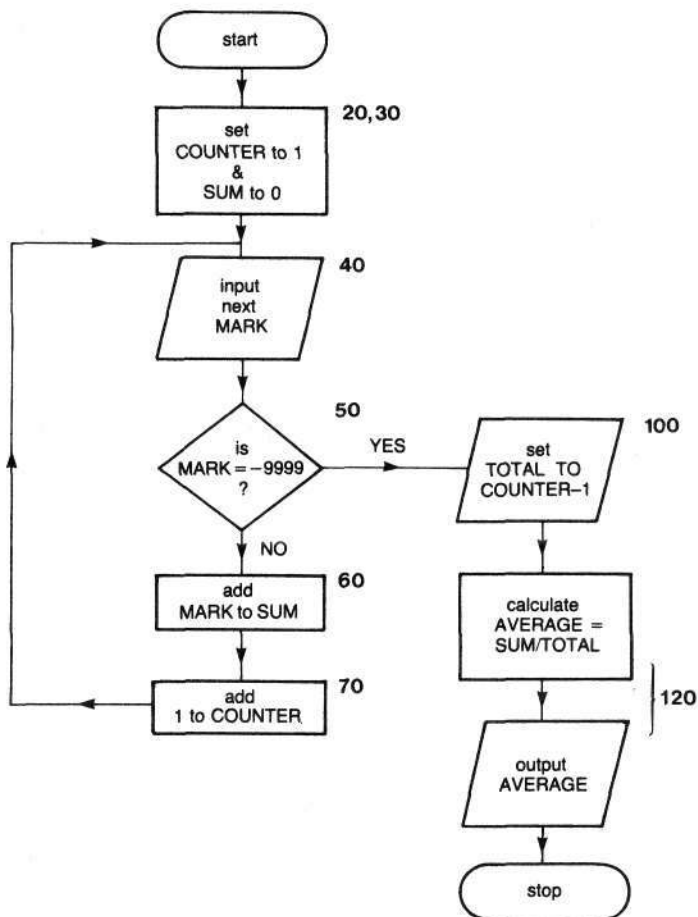


Figure 2 Flowchart for arithmetic mean

```

10 REM **ARITHMETIC MEAN**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 LET C=1
30 LET S=0
35 REM **PROCESSING LOOP**
40 READ M
50 IF M=-9999 THEN 95
60 LET S=S+M
70 LET C=C+1
80 GOTO 35
90 REM *****
95 REM **CORRECT COUNT**
100 LET N=C-1
110 REM *****
115 PRINT "ARITHMETIC MEAN PROGRAM"
120 PRINT "AVERAGE=";S/N
130 REM *****
900 DATA 56,47,52,65,24,34,59,37,49,66
910 DATA 38,24,62,76,31,47,66,61,74,45
920 DATA 66,44,55,67,36,56,54,54,50,43
930 DATA 18,83,23,79,-9999

```

Program 1 Arithmetic mean

```

RUN
ARITHMETIC MEAN PROGRAM
AVERAGE= 50.5714286
READY.

```

Program 1.

Exercise 1

Write a program to find the average length of the words in the 'Jude' DATA statements of Example 2 of Unit 5. You can do this by grafting a routine onto Program 1 of Unit 5 which already finds the lengths of words.

Exercise 2

Write a program to find the average score in a simulated experiment of tossing a die 100 times. Run it 10 times to see what range of results you get.

Simulation

The expected average score when throwing a die a large number of times is:

$$\frac{1+2+3+4+5+6}{6} = \frac{21}{6} = 3.5$$

However, in our runs of Exercise 2, we only hit exactly 3.5 once with values ranging from 3.24 to 3.76. That was from the results of 3,000 (30 × 100) throws so you might well ask, 'Is the random number generator biased?' (We did call it 'pseudo' anyway!) How many experiments do we need to convince us that it is, or is not, biased?

To explore that question fully we need to go into statistical theory that is beyond the scope of this course but we can at least find the mean of these means. All we have to do is to take data from the 30 runs of the program:

3.56,3.47,3.52,3.65,...

and enter them into the DATA statements of Program 1 above. This gives us the mean of the means.

You will notice below that we have entered only the decimal parts of the numbers in order to make our data entry a little easier, e.g. 56 instead of 3.56. (We can do this because all the numbers are 3. something.)

```
130 REM ★★★★★★★★★★★★★★
900 DATA 56,47,52,65,24,34,59,37,49,66
910 DATA 38,24,62,76,31,47,66,61,74,45
920 DATA 66,44,55,67,36,56,54,54,50,43
930 DATA -9999
940 END
RUN
AVERAGE= 51.2666667
```

Figure 3

Thus the overall mean of 3,000 throws is 3.51 to 2 decimal places – a bit more convincing!

Simulation summarised

Simulation is rather a grand word for what we have just done. However, we wanted to emphasize that we can simulate a real life activity without getting deeply involved in statistics. We couldn't toss a die 3,000 times in classroom but with a computer we can collect and process data fairly rapidly.

If your curiosity has been aroused then try the following exercise.

Exercise 3

Write a program to find the average score in a simulated experiment of tossing 2 dice 100 times.

What would you expect the average score to be in this case and in experiments with 3, 4 . . . dice? Are your expectations justified by your experiments?

8.3 Range

While discussing the results of Exercise 2 on the previous page, we quite naturally used the idea of range. we said that the values ranged from 3.24 to 3.76. The process involves finding the lowest and highest values of the set.

Example 3

Devise an algorithm and write a routine to find the maximum and minimum values of the numbers stored in the DATA statements in Example 2. Add this routine to the program to find the arithmetic mean as written as a solution to Example 2.

(If you feel confident enough, treat this Example as an exercise before working through our solution.)

Solution

You may feel we've been here before in Unit 4 when we found the lowest member of a list. We could use that approach again but to do so we would first have to put the data in a list form and then sort it twice with the interchange routine. That's a lot of work so we will look at a shorter approach: trying to find the lowest and highest marks as the data is read in.

We know how to read in the data (lines 10–50 in Program 1) but what do we do with it as each item is read?

- First we create two stores:
M for top mark so far
B for bottom mark so far.
- Then we read the first mark and put it into both B and M. After all it is the lowest and highest so far!
- Then we read each mark and if it is higher than M, put it into M or, if lower than B, put it into B. If neither, just read the next mark.

So a descriptive solution is:

Description

1. Start routine.
2. If counter=1 then write mark into top and bottom and go to 6 otherwise carry on to 3.
3. If mark > top then write mark into top and go to 6 otherwise carry on to 4.
4. If mark >=bottom then got to 6 otherwise carry on to 5.
5. Write mark into bottom.
6. End routine.

Figure 4

And a flowchart:

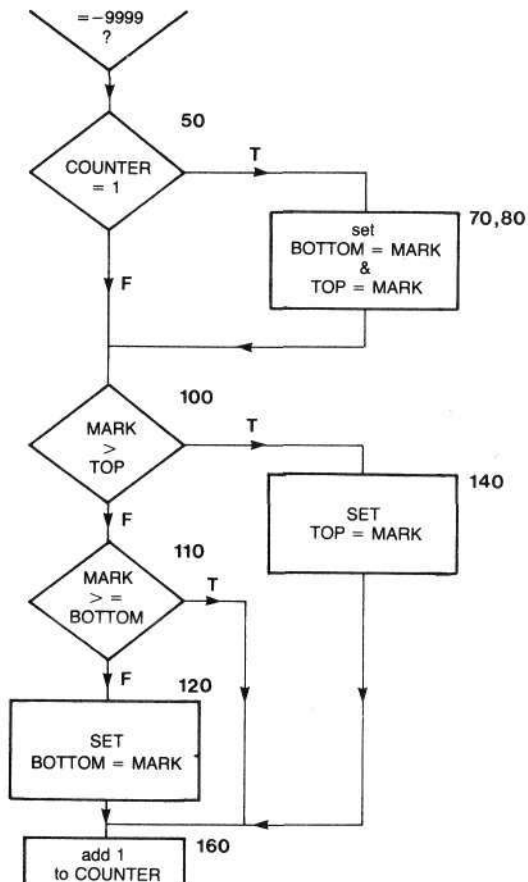


Figure 5.

Which do you find easiest to follow?

Where there are several branches in a program, the descriptive algorithm can be rather confusing. The two dimensional display of the flowchart may be more helpful. It's a matter of personal choice; you judge for yourself!

```
10 REM **MAX AND MIN**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 LET C=1
25 LET S=0
28 REM **READ A VALUE**
30 READ M
40 IF M=-9999 THEN 185
50 IF C>1 THEN 95
60 REM *****
70 LET B=M
80 LET T=M
90 REM *****
95 REM **CHECK FOR MAX/MIN**
100 IF M>T THEN 135
110 IF M>=B THEN 155
120 LET B=M
130 GOTO 155
135 REM **NEW MAX VALUE**
140 LET T=M
150 REM *****
155 REM **TOTAL FOR AVERAGE**
160 LET C=C+1
165 LET S=S+M
170 GOTO 28
180 REM *****
185 REM **OUTPUT**
190 PRINT "MAX=";T,"MIN=";B
200 REM *****
210 LET N=C-1
220 PRINT "AVERAGE=";S/N
230 REM *****
900 DATA 56,47,52,65,24,34,59,37,49,66
910 DATA 38,24,62,76,31,47,66,61,74,45
920 DATA 66,44,55,67,36,56,54,54,50,43
930 DATA 18,83,23,79,-9999
```

the program visits this
backwater only the first time
round the loop when C=1.

the decisions are made
here.

Program 2

```
RUN
MAX= 83      MIN= 18
AVERAGE = 50.5714286
READY.
```

Program 2.

Exercise 4

Write a program to draw up a frequency table for the data in Program 2, using categories:

0-9, 10-19, 20-29, . . . 90-99

Suggestion

You could use a score-list

S(0), S(10), S(20), . . . S(100)

and for each mark read in, test whether it is less than the top of the second band (10), less than the top of the third band (20), etc. until you find

MARK < K true

then increment S(K-10). This is the approach we have used (see answer).

8.4 Number crunching

We have avoided anything other than fairly simple arithmetic so far in the course, and will continue to do so. But it would be wrong not to give a brief insight into the computer's arithmetic capacity. If your heart sinks at the sight of the following few pages, you will miss no vital programming information if you pass on to the next section on dry running and tracing, but we hope you will give it a try. The Commodore 64 certainly does take the drudgery out of arithmetic.

Here is a simple program which calculates the numbers 1 to 10 their squares (line 50), cubes (line 60) and reciprocals (line 70) and then tabulates the result.

```
1  REM **TABULATE THE SQUARES, CUBES AND
2  REM  RECIPROCAL FOR THE FIRST TEN
3  REM  NATURAL NUMBERS**
5  PRINT CHR$(147)
10 PRINT " N":TAB(7)"N*N";TAB(13);"N*N*N";TAB(21);"1/N"
20 PRINT
25 REM **PROCESSING LOOP**
30 FOR I=1 TO 10
35 REM **NUMBER**
40 LET N=I
45 REM **SQUARE**
50 LET S=I*I
55 REM **CUBE**
60 LET C=I*I*I
65 REM **RECIPROCAL**
70 LET R=1/I
75 REM **PRINT **
80 PRINT N;TAB(7);S;TAB(13);C;TAB(21);R
90 NEXT I
95 REM **END OF LOOP**
100 END
```

Program 3

RUN	N★N	N★N★N	1/N
1	1	1	1
2	4	8	.5
3	9	27	.333333333
4	16	64	.25
5	25	125	.2
6	36	216	.166666667
7	49	343	.142857
8	64	512	.125
9	81	729	.111111111
10	100	1000	.1

[K] Program 3

Raising to a power

We expect that you are familiar with the notation:

$$4 \times 4 = 4^2 \text{ (4-squared or 4 raised to the power 2)}$$

$$7 \times 7 \times 7 = 7^3 \text{ (7-cubed or 7 raised to the power 3)}$$

$$10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 = 10^5 \text{ (10 raised to the power 5)}$$

In BASIC raised to the power is shown as ↑. Any number N raised to the power P is shown as N↑P. P is called the exponent and raising to a power is called exponentiation.

Similarly for negative powers:

	N	P	N↑P
$\frac{1}{4} \times \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{4 \times 4} = 4^{-2}$	4	-2	4↑(-2)
$\frac{1}{7} \times \frac{1}{7} \times \frac{1}{7} = \frac{1}{7 \times 7 \times 7} = 7^{-3}$	7	-3	7↑(-3)
$\frac{1}{10} \times \frac{1}{10} \times \frac{1}{10} \times \frac{1}{10} \times \frac{1}{10} = \frac{1}{10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10} = 10^{-5}$	10	-5	10↑(-5)

Fractional powers (positive and negative) are also possible but we will not be concerned with them.

We can use the ↑ notation instead of ★ in Program 3. Thus Program 3 re-written with becomes:

```

1  REM ★★TABULATE THE SQUARES, CUBES AND★★
2      RECIPROCALs FOR THE FIRST TEN
3      NATURAL NUMBERS★★
5  PRINT CHR$(147)
10 PRINT " N";TAB(7);"N↑2";TAB(13);"N↑3";TAB(21)"N↑(-1)"
20 FOR N=1 TO 10
30 PRINT N;TAB(7);N↑2;TAB(13);N↑3;TAB(21);N↑(-1)
40 NEXT N
50 END

```

Program 4

We have put this program here to show you that raising to a power is not exact with the Commodore 64. See section 8.6, Representation of Numbers, for an explanation.

Sequences and their sums

Calculating the individual terms in a sequence, or the sum of the first N terms, is a very great labour without a computer. How long would it take you to evaluate the terms of

$$\frac{1}{1^2}, \frac{1}{2^2}, \frac{1}{3^2}, \dots, \frac{1}{N^2} ?$$

Well it's very easy with Program 5.

```
3 PRINT CHR$(147)
5 PRINT "SERIES CALCULATION"
10 PRINT "N".N↑(-2)
15 REM **START OF PROCESSING LOOP**
20 FOR N=1 TO 10
30 PRINT N,N↑(-2)
40 NEXT N
50 END
```

Program 5

```
RUN
SERIES CALCULATION
N          N↑(-2)
1          1
2          .25
3          .111111111
4          .0625
5          .04
6          .277777778
7          .0204081633
8          .15625
9          .012345679
10         .01
READY.
```

Program 5.

Exercise 5

Write a program to find how many terms of the series

$$1, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{4}, \dots$$

are needed to make their sum exceed 2.4.

Exercise 6

Modify the program from Exercise 5 to find out how many terms are needed for sum

$$= 1 + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{4^2} + \dots$$

to exceed 1.5.

Exercise 7

Factorials are interesting numbers. Factorial 4=4×3×2×1 and is usually written 4!
So

$$\text{Factorial } 7 = 7 \times 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 7!$$

$$\text{Factorial } N = N \times (N-1) \times (N-2) \times \dots \times 1 = N!$$

Write a program to evaluate the factorials of any positive integer.

Exercise 8

We wrote a rather clumsy program to evaluate the yield (Y) on a deposit (D) at compound interest percentage (P) way back in Unit 1. A neater formula is $Y = D \times (1 + P/100)^T$ where T is the number of years of the investment.

Write a program to evaluate the yield, using this formula, for various deposits, percentages and time periods.

8.7 Dry running

Often we find that a program either does not work at all, or not to our complete satisfaction. If we have reasonable access to a computer we may sit at the machine until we trace the fault, but when all else fails we may be forced to sit down with pencil and paper and think hard. Stepping through an algorithm line by line with pencil and paper is called dry running.

We shall illustrate dry running by looking at Program 18 which was the solution to Exercise 5.

```
10 REM **SUM OF RECIPROCAL**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 LET S=0
30 LET N=1
35 REM **START OF PROCESSING LOOP**
40 LET S=S+1/N
50 IF S>2.4 THEN 80
60 LET N=N+1
70 GOTO 35
80 REM **OUTPUT**
90 PRINT "SUM=";S;" THE NO. OF TERMS IS ";N
100 END
```

Program 18 (from Exercise 5)

```
RUN
SUM= 2.45 THE NO. OF TERMS IS 6
READY.
```

Tracing means finding and recording each step, the line number executed at that step and the values of the variables after that line has been executed. so, for Program 18 we need the headings:

step No.	line No.	N	S
1			
2			
etc			

We omit from the trace lines which don't affect the variables, i.e.:

REM (line 10)
 GOTO (line 70)
 PRINT (lines 15 & 90)

Apart from these, the program steps are as follows:

step No.	line No.	N	S
1	20	0	0
2	30	1	0
3	40	1	1

Step No.	line no.	N	S	
4	50	1	1	
5	60	2	1] Note effect of GOTO 40 line 60
6	40	2	1.5	
7	50	2	1.5	
8	60	3	1.5] GOTO again
9	40	3	1.83	
10	50	3	1.83	
11	60	4	1.83] GOTO
12	40	4	2.08	
13	50	4	2.08	
14	60	5	2.08] GOTO
15	40	5	2.28	
16	50	5	2.28	
17	60	6	2.28] GOTO
18	40	6	2.45	

Figure 6

Tracing

Some BASIC interpreters provide a TRACE command, the Commodore 64 does not. This is no great loss, as these often provide so much information that it is difficult to see the wood for the trees. A carefully designed trace routine of your own works best. Later in this Unit we will show you how to write your own trace into a program.

SAQ 2

Complete a dry-run on the following program, starting when line 20 has just been executed and continuing until the condition in line 50 is true. Draw up the table with the same headings as in the above example.

```
10 REM **SUM OF SQUARES**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 S=0
30 N=1
35 REM **ADD NEXT TERM**
40 S=S+N2
50 IF S>50 THEN 80
60 N=N+1
70 GOTO 35
80 REM **OUTPUT**
85 PRINT "SUM OF SQUARES"
90 PRINT "SUM=";S;" NO. OF TERMS IS";N
100 END
```

Program 6

8.6 The representation of numbers

So far in the course we have left in abeyance a number of questions about the representation of numbers in our programs. We do not intend to consider the mathematics of number representation in computers in general but we need to tidy up our ideas about numbers.

In general terms computers must be able to process and store the following types of number:

- positive and negative whole numbers (integers or counting numbers);
- fractions and numbers which are partly whole and partly fractional (measuring numbers);
- very large and very small numbers;
- the number zero.

The single most important piece of advice that we can give you at this stage is that if a number has been involved in any sort of calculation within a program then consider it with a certain amount of suspicion. The reason for this statement is that numbers within a computer are stored and manipulated in binary form, that is to base 2, rather than to the base 10 with which we are familiar. In our familiar decimal notation you will recall that a number like $\frac{1}{3}$ or $\frac{1}{7}$ is incapable of exact expression, e.g. $\frac{1}{3} = 0.3333 \dots$. We assume that by adding as many 3's to this number as we wish we can achieve an acceptable level of accuracy in any particular problem. In the binary system, in just the same way, some numbers cannot be expressed exactly, e.g. in decimal form we can say that $\frac{1}{10} = 0.1$ exactly but when this number is changed into binary form it cannot be represented exactly.

Most BASIC interpreters allow for numbers to be expressed to an accuracy of six decimal digits. In decimal form then the number $3\frac{1}{10}$ could be represented as 3.10000 to six decimal digit accuracy. However, if this number had been the result of some calculation within a computer, we might find that the number output was 3.09999 or

3.10001. So, in general, you must always be suspicious of the least significant digit in any answer (i.e. the digit on the far right of the number).

We saw this in the output to Program 4.

Program 7 shows how this type of inaccuracy may occur. The FOR . . . NEXT loop adds 4.0, 4.1 and 4.25 into locations S, T and U one thousand times. Now 4.0 and 425 are exactly represented in binary form, but 4.1 is not. We can see that the result of this repetitious summation is exact in respect of 4.0 and 4.25, but not for 4.1 where the error is 0.04 in 4100.00. Obviously, we would avoid writing programs involving such repetitions wherever possible, but we hope that the program will act as a warning about possible inaccuracies.

```
10 REM ***ACCURACY DEMONSTRATION**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 LET S=0
30 LET T=0
40 LET U=0
50 LET I=1 TO 1000
60 LET S=S+4.0
70 LET T=T+4.1
80 LET U=U+4.25
90 NEXT I
100 PRINT S,T,U
120 END
```

Program 7

```
RUN
 4000  4100.00016  4250
```

READY.

Program 7.

Small and large numbers

Six decimal digits do not allow us to cope with very small or very large numbers. So these numbers are represented in BASIC in exponential form.

Small numbers

0.000586321 means $\frac{586321}{1,000,000,000} = \frac{586321}{10^9}$

which could be expressed as 586321×10^{-9} . We could also express 0.000586321 as

$$\frac{0.586321}{1000} = 0.586321 \times 10^{-3}$$

In BASIC this last number would be written as 0.56321E-3 or 0.586321E-03

Similarly,

$$0.0234539 = 2.34539 \times 10^{-2} = 2.34539E-2$$

and

$$0.00000000959734 = 0.959734 \times 10^{-8} = 0.959734E-8.$$

E stands for exponent, and the base for exponentiation is 10. So E-4 means move the decimal point 4 places to the left, and E+9 means move the decimal point 9 places to the right.

Large numbers

$$12368500 = 1.23685 \times 10^7 = 1.23685E+7$$

$$935.432 = 0.935432 \times 10^3 = 0.935432E+3$$

$$959734000000000000000000 = 0.959734E+21$$

most BASIC interpreters have a range of at least E-32 to E+32; The range of the Commodore 64 is 2.93873588E-39 to 1.70141183E+38

```
10 REM **NUMBER DEMONSTRATION**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT "NUMBER", "REPRESENTATION"
30 FOR I=-10 TO 10
40 PRINT "10↑";I,10↑I
50 NEXT I
```

Program 8

Program 8

```
RUN
NUMBER          DEMONSTRATION
10↑-10          9.99999998E-11
10↑-9           1E-09
10↑-8           1E-08
10↑-7           1E-07
10↑-6           1E-06
10↑-5           1E-05
10↑-4           1E-04
10↑-3           1E-03
10↑-2           .01
10↑-1           .1
10↑0            1
10↑1            10
10↑2            100
10↑3            1000
10↑4            10000
10↑5            100000
10↑6            1000000
10↑7            10000000
10↑8            100000000
10↑9            1E+09
10↑10           1E+10
READY.
```

8.7 The INT-function for rounding

For some problems we need to round off the result of a calculation to the nearest whole number.

e.g. 6.6. to the nearest whole number is 7
7.4 to the nearest whole number is 7.

This is especially true if we are not confident about the last figure accuracy of a decimal number,

e.g. 6.99999 or 7.00001 for 7.

The function $\text{INT}(X+0.5)$ does this rounding for us as the following program demonstrates.

```
10 REM ★★INT FOR ROUNDING★★
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT "X", "INT(X)", "INT(X+0.5)"
30 FOR I=-1.4 TO -2.6 STEP (-.1)
40 PRINT I, INT(I), INT(I+0.5)
50 NEXT I
60 END
```

X	INT(X)	INT(X+0.5)
-1.4	-2	-1
-1.5	-2	-1
-1.6	-2	-2
-1.7	-2	-2
-1.8	-2	-2
-1.9	-2	-2
-2	-2	-2
-2.1	-3	-2
-2.2	-3	-2
-2.3	-3	-2
-2.4	-3	-2
-2.5	-3	-2
-2.6	-3	-3

Program 9a

Changing line 30 to 30 FOR I=1.4 TO 2.6 STEP(.1) gives

X	INT(X)	INT(X+0.5)
1.4	1	1
1.5	1	2
1.6	1	2
1.7	1	2
1.8	1	2
1.9	1	2
2	2	2
2.1	2	2
2.2	2	2
2.3	2	2
2.4	2	2
2.5	2	3
2.6	2	3

Program 9b

Program 9a.

SAQ 3

What print-outs will we get from the above program if we change line 30 as follows::

- (a) 30 FOR I=.4 TO 2.2 STEP (.2)?
(b) 30 FOR I=.4 TO -.6 STEP (-.2)?

8.8. The ABS-function

An arithmetic function related to the above ideas, is to find the modulus, or absolute value of a number. It sounds rather grand, but is very simple.

ABS(X) simply gives us the positive value of X.

e.g. ABS(23)=23, ABS(-23)=23

The following program illustrates the function.

```
10 REM **THE ABS-FUNCTION**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT "X","Y","X+Y","ABS(X+Y)"
30 FOR I=1 TO 4
40 READ X,Y
50 PRINT X,Y,X+Y,ABS(X+Y)
60 NEXT I
100 DATA 5,7,5,-7,-5,7,-5,-7
```

Program 10

RUN

X	Y	X+Y	ABS(X+Y)
5	7	12	12
5	-7	-2	2
-5	7	2	2
-5	-7	-12	12

READY.

Program 10

SAQ 4

What will the print-out table be if we change line 100 to

100 DATA 9,14,11,-2,-4,13,-7,-8?

8.9 Iteration

The process of making a guess at a value, testing it, making a better guess and testing again, etc., until we home in on an item or value is known as iteration. The essence of iteration involves:

- making an arbitrary start
- guessing how accurate this point is
- refining this in a sequence of repeated operations.

Square root by iteration

BASIC can do square roots directly as this program demonstrates:

```
5 REM **DIRECT SQUARE ROOTS**
7 PRINT CHR$(147)
10 FOR X=33 TO 63 STEP(10)
20 PRINT X;TAB(5);X^(.5),SQR(X)
30 NEXT X
```

Program 11

(SQR(X) gives the square root of X provided that $X \geq 0$.)

RUN

```
33      5.74456265      5.74456265
43      6.55743853      6.55743853
53      7.28010989      7.28010989
63      7.93725393      7.93725393
```

READY.

However, we shall also show you how to find a square root by an iterative method not because that's how you would normally do it but because it's an easy example through which to demonstrate iteration.

The method

If you want to square root a number N, then:

- take a guess at the square root, say G
- work out N/G
- then the average of G and N/G is an even better guess than your first one, i.e. it is closer to the unknown square root than your first guess.
- go back to the beginning using this new 'better' guess.

We shan't prove this here (it's in plenty of maths textbooks) but we shall show its working in a simple case.

To square root $N = 12$
Guess $G = 2$
Work out $N/G = 6$
Take average $\frac{G + N/G}{2} = \frac{2 + 6}{2} = 4$

So 4 is the new guess

Guess $G = 4$
 $N/G = 3$
 $\frac{G + N/G}{2} = 3.5$

So 3.5 is the new guess.

In table form this looks like:

G	N/G	$\frac{G+N/G}{2}$
2	$12/2=6$	$(2+6)/2=4$
4	$12/4=3$	$(4+3)/2=3.5$
3.5	$12/3.5=...$	....

Figure 7

SAQ 5

To make sure than you have grasped the process draw up a table similar to that above, but make your first guess 1.

Iteration . . . stop

The question now is: 'How do we stop the process?' Well, we want to stop the process when the square of our guess becomes as close as possible to N. What do we mean by 'as close as possible'? The answer is that it's up to you. You're in charge! How accurate do you want the square root to be? If, for example, we wish to find the square root of 12 to 2 decimal places, then the difference between $G \star G$ and N would have to be

$$< 0.005$$

We don't need to know whether $G \star G$ is bigger or smaller than N — only the difference matters. So we are back to ABS. If

$$\text{ABS}(N - G \star G) < 0.005$$

then stop, is what we are after.

Descriptive algorithm for square root iteration

1. Start.
2. Input the number whose square root is sought.
3. Input the accuracy required.
4. Input a guess at the square root.
5. If the guess is within the accuracy required then go to 8 otherwise continue with the next statement.
6. Make the guess more accurate.
7. Return to 5.
8. Output the square root value found.
9. Stop.

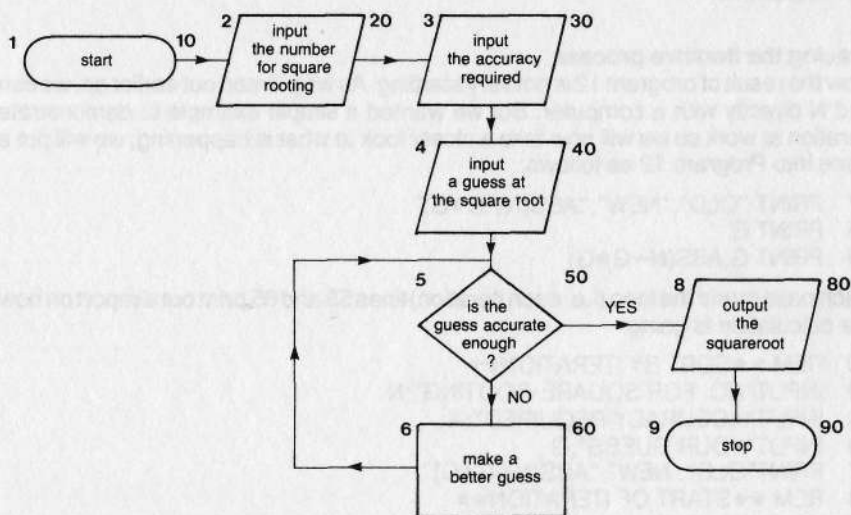


Figure 9 Flowchart for square root iteration

```

10 REM **SQRT BY ITERATION**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 INPUT"NO. FOR SQUARE-ROOTING";N
30 INPUT"ACCURACY REQUIRED";A
40 INPUT "YOUR GUESS";G
45 REM **START OF ITERATION**
50 IF ABS(N-G*G)<A THEN 80
60 LET G=.5*(G+(N/G))
70 GOTO 45
75 REM **OUTPUT**
80 PRINT
81 PRINT "THE SQRT OF ";N;" IS ";G
90 END

```

Program 12 Square root iteration

```

RUN
NO. FOR SQUARE-ROOTING? 12
ACCURACY REQUIRED? .005
YOUR GUESS? 2

```

THE SQRT OF 12 IS 3.46428572

READY.

```

RUN

```

```

NO. FOR SQUARE-ROOTING? 12
ACCURACY REQUIRED? .00005
YOU GUESS? 2

```

THE SQRT OF 12 IS 3.46410162

READY.

Program 12.

Tracing the iterative process

Now the result of program 12 is not very startling. As we pointed out earlier on, we can find N directly with a computer. But we wanted a simple example to demonstrate iteration at work so we will now take a closer look at what is happening, we will put a trace into Program 12 as follows:

```

47 PRINT "OLD", "NEW", "ABS(N-G*G)"
55 PRINT G
65 PRINT G,ABS(N-G*G)

```

Each pass round the loop (i.e. each iteration) lines 55 and 65 print out a report on how the calculation is going.

```

10 REM **SQRT BY ITERATION**
20 INPUT"NO. FOR SQUARE-ROOTING";N
30 INPUT"ACCURACY REQUIRED";A
40 INPUT"YOUR GUESS";G
47 PRINT"OLD": "NEW", "ABS(N-G*G)"
48 REM **START OF ITERATION**
50 IF ABS(N-G*G)<A THEN 80
55 PRINT G
60 LET G=.5*(G+N/G))

```

```

65 PRINT G,ABS(N-G*G)
70 GOTO 48
75 REM **OUTPUT**
80 PRINT
81 PRINT"THE SQRT OF ";N;" IS ";G
90 END

```

Program 13 Iterative square root with trace

```

RUN
NO. FOR SQUARE-ROOTING? 12
ACCURACY REQUIRED? .005
YOUR GUESS? 2

```

OLD	NEW	ABS(N-G*G)	
2	4	4	
4	3.5	.25	3 loops only
3.5	3.46428572	1.27551204E-03	

THE SQRT OF 12 IS 3.46428572

READY.

```

RUN
NO. FOR SQUARE-ROOTING? 12
ACCURACY REQUIRED? .0005 ——increasing the accuracy tenfold still only
YOUR GUESS? 2 takes 4 loops

```

OLD	NEW	ABS(N-G*G)
2	0	4
0		

? DIVISION BY ZERO ERROR IN 60

Depending on the size of the number, if we input a negative number, either the Commodore 64 will come up with an error message (as it did above), or it will keep outputting gibberish, so that the program has to be stopped by touching RUN STOP.

OLD	NEW	ABS(N-G*G)
2	4	4
4	3.5	.25
3.5	3.46429572	1.27551204E-03
3.46429572	3.46410162	3.38040991E-08

THE SQRT OF 12 IS 3.46410162

Program 13.

```

RUN
NO. FOR SQUARE-ROOTING? -4 —— if we give it a negative number
ACCURACY REQUIRED? .005
YOUR GUESS? 2

```

Exercise 9

Change the square root program above to produce cube roots. If G is a guess at the cube root of N then $\frac{1}{3}(G+N/G^2)$ will be a better guess.

Assignment 8

1. Produce a conversion chart for changing litres to gallons, and vice versa, displayed on the screen. Make the litre answers rounded to the nearest whole number and the gallon answers rounded to two places of decimals; use the conversion 1 gallon equals 4.544 litres.

Notes: Set the numbers 1 to 15 down the centre of the screen; output litre equivalents down the right-hand side; e.g. the first row would have 5 under the litres column, 1 in the centre column, and 0.22 in the gallons column, because 1 gallon is 5 litres, and 1 litre is 0.22 gallons. Produce 15 rows of the table which will leave space for titles etc.

2. Produce a program to calculate and display your car's petrol consumption, from the distance travelled since the fuel tank was last filled up, and the amount of fuel needed to refill the tank.

Hint: you should use the $\text{INT}(X+0.5)$ function to provide reasonable levels of accuracy.

If you were feeling very confident, you could allow your fuel consumption program to cater for either miles/gallon or km/litre! (1 mile = 1.609 km; 1 gallon = 4.544 litres).

Objectives of Unit 8

Calculate (manually) an arithmetic mean.

Write a program to calculate arithmetic means.

Write a program to find the largest and smallest item in a data list.

Use \star , / and \uparrow in programs.

Dry run a program.

Interpret numbers in E notation.

Use $\text{INT}(X+.5)$ for rounding.

Use $\text{ABS}(X)$.

Write programs for iterative routines to include terminating procedures.

Insert trace print lines in a program.

Answers to SAQ's and Exercises

SAQ 1

Sum = $8 + 4 + 2 + 6 + 1 + 7 + 6 + 1 + 4 = 39$

There are 9 numbers.

So the arithmetic mean is $39/9 = 4.333 \dots$

Exercise 1

```
10 REM **AVERAGE LENGTH**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
17 PRINT "AVERAGE LENGTH PROGRAM"
20 LET S=0
30 LET C=1
35 REM **START OF READ LOOP**
40 READ W$
50 IF W$="ZZZZ" THEN 150
60 LET L=LEN(W$)
70 LET S=S+L
80 LET C=C+ 1
90 GOTO 35
100 REM *****
110 DATA THE,HORSE,STOOD,STILL,TILL,HE,HAD,FINISHED,THE,HYMN
120 DATA WHICH,JUDE,REPEATED,UNDER,THE,SWAY,OF,A,POLYTHEISTIC
130 DATA FANCY,THAT,HE,WOULD,NEVER,HAVE,THOUGHT,OF,HUMOURING
140 DATA IN,BROAD,DAYLIGHT,ZZZZ
150 REM *****
160 LET N=C-1
170 LET A=S/N
180 PRINT "AVERAGE LENGTH OF THE WORDS IS"
185 PRINT A; "CHARACTERS"
190 END
```

Program 14

AVERAGE LENGTH OF WORDS
IS 4.64516129 CHARACTERS

Program 14.

Exercise 2

```
10 REM **MEAN OF 100 THROWS**
20 REM **OF 1 DIE**
25 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 PRINT "THROW 1 DIE 100 TIMES"
50 LET S=0
60 FOR I=1 TO 100
70 LET X=INT(6*RND(1)+1)
80 LET S=S+X
90 NEXT I
100 PRINT "AVERAGE SCORE=";S/100
110 END
```

Program 15

Program 15.

Exercise 3

```
10 REM **MEAN OF 100 THROWS**
20 REM **OF 2 DICE**
25 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 PRINT "THROW 2 DICE 100 TIMES"
50 LET S=0
60 FOR I=1 TO 100
70 LET X=INT(6*RND(1)+1)
85 LET Y=INT(6*RND(1)+1)
80 LET S=S+X+Y
90 NEXT I
100 PRINT "AVERAGE SCORE=";S/100
110 END
```

Program 16

Program 16

Exercise 4

```
10 REM **HISTOGRAM**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 DIM S(100)
30 FOR K=0 TO 100 STEP (10):S(K)=0:NEXT K
40 REM *****
50 READ M
60 IF M=-9999 THEN 140
70 REM *****
80 K=10
85 REM **FIND RANGE OF DATA ITEM**
90 IF M<K THEN 115 _____ K for score category
or class interval
100 K=K+10
110 GOTO 85
115 REM **STORE DATA**
120 S(K-10)=S(K-10)+1 _____ correct category found.
Increment counter for
that category.
130 GOTO 40
140 REM *****
150 FOR K=0 TO 100 STEP (10)
160 PRINT K,S(K)
170 NEXT K
180 REM *****
190 DATA 56,47,52,65,24,34,59,37,49,66
200 DATA 38,24,62,76,31,47,66,61,74,45
210 DATA 66,44,55,67,36,56,54,54,50,43
220 DATA 18,83,23,79,29,-9999
```

Program 17

```
RUN
0      0
10     1
20     4
30     5
40     6
50     7
60     3
```



```
80      1
90      0
100     0
[K] Program 17.
```

Exercise 5

```
10 REM **SUM OF RECIPROCAL**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 LET S=0
30 LET N=1
35 REM **START OF PROCESSING LOOP**
40 LET S=S+1/N
50 IF S>2.4 THEN 80
60 LET N=N+1
70 GOTO 35
80 REM **OUTPUT**
90 PRINT "SUM=";S;" THE NO. OF TERMS IS ";N
100 END
```

Program 18

```
RUN
SUM= 2.45 THE NO. OF TERMS IS 6
```

[K] Program 18.

Exercise 6

```
10 REM **SUM OF  $N^{(-2)}$ **
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 S=0
30 N=1
35 REM **START OF PROCESSING LOOP**
40 S=S+N(-2)
50 IF S>1.5 THEN 80
60 N=N+1
70 GOTO 35
80 REM **OUTPUT**
90 PRINT "SUM=";S;"THE NO. OF TERMS IS, ";N
100 END
```

Program 19

```
RUN
SUM= 1.51179705 THE NO. OF TERMS IS 7
READY.
```

You can, of course, change line 50 to explore the number of terms needed for the sum to exceed other values, eg.

```
50 IF S>1.6 THEN 80
```

```
RUN
```

```
SUM= 1.60049693 THE NO. OF TERMS IS 22 _____ for 1.6
```

```
READY.
```

```
50 IF S>1.61 THEN 80
```

```
RUN
```

```
SUM= 1.61103901 THE NO. OF TERMS IS 29 _____ for 1.61
```

```
READY.
```

```
50 IF S>1.62 THEN 80
```

```
RUN
```

```
SUM= 1.62024396 THE NO. OF TERMS IS 40 _____ for 1.62
```

```
READY.
```

```
50 IF S>1.63 THEN 80
```

```
RUN
```

```
SUM= 1.63011952 THE NO. OF TERMS IS 67 _____ for 1.63
```

```
READY.
```

What a good starting point these and similar programs would make to lessons about limits and convergence of number series!

Program 19.

Exercise 7

```
10 REM **FACTORIALS**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT "TO END THE RUN, ENTER -9999"
30 PRINT
35 REM **NEXT INPUT**
40 INPUT"NEXT FACTORIAL";N
50 IF N=-9999 THEN 125
60 LET F=1
70 FOR I=1 TO N
80 LET F=F*I
90 NEXT I
100 PRINT N,F
110 PRINT
120 GOTO 35
125 REM **ALL DONE**
130 END
```

Program 20

```
RUN
```

```
TO END THE RUN, ENTER -9999
```

```
NEXT FACTORIAL? 1
```

```
1 1
```

```
NEXT FACTORIAL? 3
```

```
1 6
```

```
NEXT FACTORIAL? 5
```

```
5 120
```

NEXT FACTORIAL? 7

7 5040

NEXT FACTORIAL? 9

9 362880

NEXT FACTORIAL? 11

11 39916800

NEXT FACTORIAL? -9999

READY.

Program 20

SAQ 2

Step No.	Line no.	N	S
1	20	0	0
2	30	1	0
3	40	1	1
4	60	2	1
5	40	2	5
6	60	3	5
7	40	3	14
8	60	4	14
9	40	4	30
10	60	5	30
11	40	5	55

Exercise 8

```
10 REM **COMPOUND INTEREST**
12 PRINT CHR$(147)
15 PRINT "COMPOUND INTEREST"
20 PRINT "ENTER DEPOSIT, PERCENTAGE, TIME"
30 INPUT D,P,T
40 PRINT "TIME", "YIELD(£)"
50 FOR I=1 TO T
60 PRINT I,D*(1+P/100)^I
70 NEXT I
80 END
```

Program 21

```
RUN
ENTER DEPOSIT, PERCENTAGE, TIME
500 , 11.5 , 5
TIME          YIELD(£)
1             557.5
2             621.612501
3             693.097938
4             772.804201
5             861.676685
```

READY.

Program 21.

SAQ 3

(a) X	INT(X)	INT(X+0.5)
.4	0	0
.6	0	1
.8	0	1
1	1	1
1.2	1	1
1.4	1	1
1.6	1	2
1.8	1	2
2	2	2

(b) X	INT(X)	INT(X+0.5)
.2	0	0
0	0	0
-.2	-1	0
-.4	-1	0
-.6	-1	-1

SAQ 4

RUN	X	Y	X+Y	ABS(X+Y)
	9	14	23	23
	11	-2	9	9
	-4	13	9	9
	-7	-8	-15	15

SAQ 5

9	N/G	$\frac{G+N/G}{2}$
1	12	6.5
6.5	1.8	4.15
4.15	2.89	3.52
3.52	3.41	3.46 etc

Exercise 9

```
10 REM **CUBEROOT ITERATION**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 INPUT"NUMBER FOR CUBEROOTING";N
30 INPUT"ACCURACY REQUIRED";A
40 LET G=N/2 _____ the machine makes the first guess at N/2
43 LET C=1
45 REM **START OF ITERATION**
50 IF ABS(N-G*G*G)<A THEN 75
60 LET G=0.5*(G+N/(G*G))
67 LET C=C+1
70 GOTO 45
75 REM **OUTPUT**
80 PRINT "THE NO. OF LOOPS =";C
81 PRINT "THE CUBEROOT OF ";N;"="";G
90 END
```

Program 22

```
RUN
NUMBER FOR CUBEROOTING? 28
ACCURACY REQUIRED? .005
THE NO. OF LOOPS= 14
THE CUBE ROOT OF 28 = 3.03640957
READY.
```

```
RUN
NUMBER FOR CUBEROOTING? 10101
ACCURACY REQUIRED? .005
THE NO. OF LOOPS = 28
THE CUBE ROOT OF 10101 = 21.6166341
READY.
```

```
RUN
NUMBER FOR CUBEROOTING? -937
ACCURACY REQUIRED? .005
THE NO. OF LOOPS= 21
THE CUBEROOT OF -937 = -9.78541983
READY.
```

Program 22.

UNIT 9

Introduction to data processing

9.1	Introduction	230
9.2	Sorting	230
9.3	Subroutines	233
9.4	Searching	238
9.5	Tables	243
	Assignment 9	248
	Objectives of Unit 9	249
	Answers to SAQ's and Exercises	249

9.1 Introduction

In this Unit we shall emphasise again how important it is to impose some sort of order on data. In particular, we shall analyse in detail one method of ordering data: the interchange procedure for sorting. Having sorted the data we shall then show how to search through it quickly using the bisection search procedure. Finally we shall look at how to handle data in tabular form.

These activities will also give us a chance to see how subroutines can help us perform many of those little repetitive tasks which can occur in programs of any size.

9.2 Sorting

In Unit 4 we spent some time discussing the procedure for finding the lowest value item in a list. We did this by an interchange procedure that put the lowest item into position 1 on the list. We said that we could repeat the procedure for the rest of the list, placing the second lowest value into position 2, etc., and we left you with the problem of sorting the whole list as an assignment. Because of the interchange sort's importance, we are now going to look at it in greater detail.

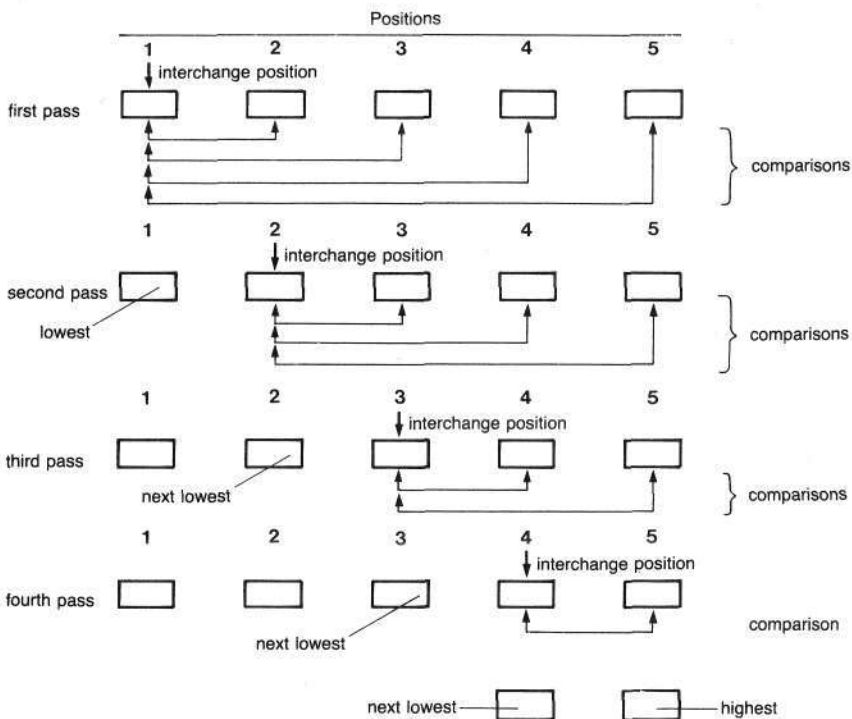


Figure 1 The sort procedure for a list of 5 items

Figure 1 illustrates the procedure for placing the items into locations 1 to 5 with the lowest item in 1, the next lowest in 2 and so on.

First pass. On the first pass all items are compared with the item in position 1 and the lowest is then placed in position 1.

Second pass. Position 1 can now be ignored and the procedure repeated on positions 2 to 5. This will find the next lowest which is placed in position 2.

Third pass. Now positions 1 and 2 can be ignored since they contain 'lowest' and 'next to lowest'. The procedure is repeated on positions 3 to 5. This finds the third lowest which goes in position 3.

Fourth pass. This is performed on items 4 and 5 only and results in the 4th lowest going into the fourth position. The remaining item must be the highest and will already be in the fifth position so no further passes are needed.

We can summarise the sort procedure as:

loop number	point interchange	remaining sub-sequence	
		start	end
1	1	2	5
2	2	3	5
3	3	4	5
4	4	5	5

Figure 2a Four sorts in a list of 5 items

Or, more generally, if we want to sort a list of N items:

loop number	interchange point	remaining sub-sequence	
		start	end
1	1	2	N
2	2	3	.
3	3	4	.
.	.	.	.
.	.	.	N
.	.	.	.
K	K	$K+1$	.
.	.	.	.
.	.	.	N
.	.	.	N
$N-1$	$N-1$	N	N

Figure 2(b) $(N-1)$ sorts in a list of N items

Since each pass involves a repetitive series of comparisons, it is an obvious candidate for a FOR . . . NEXT . . . loop. Then we need a further loop to decide which loop we are going round:

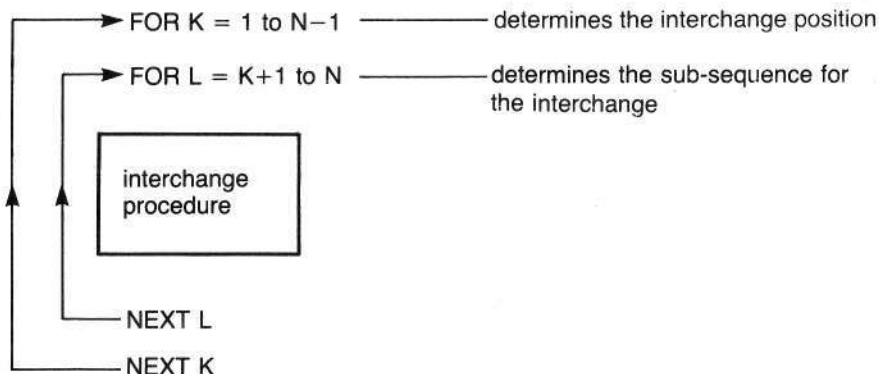


Figure 3 The nested loops of interchange sorting

SAQ 1

Use the interchange sort to place the following in order. Show the numbers stored at each location after each run

6, 1, 4, 0, 2, 3, 7, 8

The program is:

outer loop decides interchange point

```

210 REM **SORT ROUTINE**
220 FOR K=1 TO N-1
230 FOR L=K+1 TO N
240 IF X$(L) >= X$(K) THEN 275
250 T$=X$(L)
260 X$(L)=X$(K)
270 X$(K)=T$
275 REM **JUMP HERE IF IN ORDER**
280 NEXT L
290 NEXT K
300 REM **END OF SORT ROUTINE**

```

if the item in the sub-sequence is \geq the item in the interchange position then do not interchange

the 'power-house': should be condensed onto one line to speed up process

inner loop decides the sub-sequence

Program 1 Interchange sort

Using the sort program

The sort program can be used whenever it is needed. Here is one particular use: to sort a list of names into alphabetical order.

lines 50–80 read in the data
 lines 210–300 carry out the sort
 lines 410–450 print out the sorted list
 the data has been stored in line 900

```

10 REM **SORT ROUTINE**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT " . . . . . SORT ROUTINE . . . . ."
30 DIM X$(100)
50 I=1
55 REM **READ LOOP**
60 READ X$
70 IF X$="ZZZZ" THEN 180
80 X$(I)=X$:I=I+1:GOTO 55
180 REM *****
190 N=I-1: REM*LENGTH OF LIST
200 REM *****
210 REM **SORT ROUTINE*****
220 FOR K=1 TO N-1
230 FOR L=K+1 TO N
240 IF X$(L)>= X$(K) THEN 275
250 T$=X$(L)
260 X$(L)=X$(K)
270 X$(K)=T$
275 REM **JUMP HERE IF IN ORDER**
280 NEXT L
290 NEXT K
300 REM **END OF SORT ROUTINE**
400 REM *****
410 PRINT"FINAL SORTED LIST"
420 FOR P=1 TO N
430 PRINT X$(P); " ";
440 NEXT P
450 PRINT
500 REM *****
900 DATA TONY,SAM,PETE,JOE,BILL,ZZZZ
  
```

} reading in data
 } sort routine
 } printing out the result

Program 2 Using the sort routine

```

RUN
. . . . . SORT ROUTINE . . . . .
FINAL SORTED LIST
BILL JOE PETE SAM TONY
READY.
  
```

9.3 Subroutines

By the time you have reached this stage you will begin to distinguish the wood from the trees. You will be aware that programs have an overall structure and are assemblies of smaller parts like the paragraphs of an essay. It is usual to break a program down into its constituent parts, and to write and test each part separately. Certain operations are often repeated several times throughout a program. The structure of a program may be simplified and tidied up by including these repetitive operations as subroutines.

We shall illustrate subroutines by taking a final look at the sort procedure. We are going to insert two extra trace print lines into the program so that we can see what is happening at each of the three stages of the sort routine:

Sort routine	Trace print line to show
1. Input.	The list as taken in.
2. Sort.	The list after each sub-sequence.
3. Output.	The final, sorted, list.

Figure 5 shows the overall structure and how we can use one PRINT subroutine for all three PRINT operations.

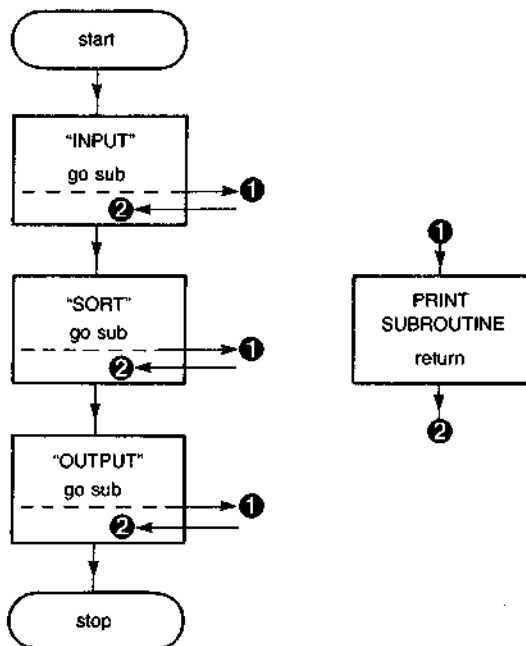


Figure 5 Print sub-routine in the sort program

GOSUB

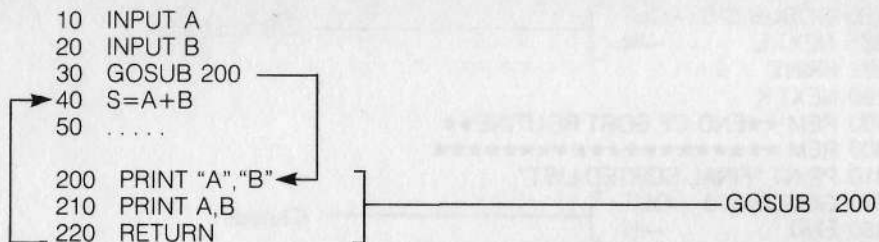
In BASIC to go to a subroutine we say:

GOSUB

followed by the line number of the start of the subroutine. Each subroutine must end with the statement

RETURN

which will return control to the next line in the main body of the program after the appropriate GOSUB statement. Thus in the following program segment line 30 transfers control to line 200 and lines 200 and 210 are executed. The 220 returns control to line 40 for the program to continue in the normal way.



SAQ 2

What is the value of B after this program has been run: (a) if 5 is inputted; (b) if 3 is inputted?

```

5 REM **SAQ2**
7 PRINT CHR$(147)
10 INPUT A
20 IF A<5 THEN 35
30 GOSUB 65
35 REM **JUMP TO HERE**
40 B=A*A
50 PRINT B
60 END
65 REM **SUBROUTINE**
70 A=1/A
80 RETURN

```

Program 3

Here is the sort program with a print subroutine (lines 500 - 550) which is used each time the program executes line 194, line 280 and line 420.

```

10 REM **SORT ROUTINE**
15 PRINT CHR$(147)
20 PRINT "..... SORT ROUTINE ....."
30 DIM X$(100)
40 PRINT "SORTING PROGRAM"
50 I=1
55 REM **READ LOOP**
60 READ X$
70 IF X$="ZZZZ" THEN 185
80 X$(I)=X$:I=I+1:GOTO 55
180 REM *****
190 N=I-1;REM*LENGTH OF LIST
192 PRINT "LIST AT START"
194 GOSUB 510 → OUT } First trace
196 PRINT ← IN }
200 REM *****
210 REM **SORT ROUTINE*****
220 FOR K=1 TO N-1
225 PRINT "PASS NO.":K
230 FOR L=K+1 TO N
240 IF X$(L) >= X$(K) THEN 275
250 T$=X$(L):X$(L)=X$(K):X$(K)=T$
275 REM **JUMP HERE IF IN ORDER**

```

```

280 GOSUB 510 →OUT }
285 NEXT L ←IN } Second trace
287 PRINT
290 NEXT K
300 REM **END OF SORT ROUTINE**
400 REM *****
410 PRINT "FINAL SORTED LIST"
420 GOSUB 510 →OUT }
450 END ←IN } Output
500 REM **PRINT SUBROUTINE**
510 for P=1 TO N
520 PRINT XS(P);TAB(P*6);
530 NEXT P
540 PRINT
550 RETURN
900 DATA TONY,SAM,PETE,JOE,BILL,ZZZ

```

Program 4 Print subroutine in sort program

```

RUN
SORTING PROGRAM
LIST AT START

```

TONY	SAM	PETE	JOE	BILL	} printed by GOSUB at line 194
PASS NO. 1					
SAM	TONY	PETE	JOE	BILL	}
PETE	TONY	SAM	JOE	BILL	
JOE	TONY	SAM	PETE	BILL	
BILL	TONY	SAM	PETE	JOE	
PASS NO. 2					
BILL	SAM	TONY	PETE	JOE	} each block printed by GOSUB at line 280 on the four occasions the program executes the loop controlled by K
BILL	PETE	TONY	SAM	JOE	
BILL	JOE	TONY	SAM	PETE	
PASS NO. 3					
BILL	JOE	SAM	TONY	PETE	} printed by GOSUB at line 420
BILL	JOE	PETE	TONY	SAM	
PASS NO. 4					
BILL	JOE	PETE	SAM	TONY	
FINAL SORTED LIST					
BILL	JOE	PETE	SAM	TONY	

READY.

Examples on subroutines

The purpose of a subroutine is to simplify and shorten long programs. By its very nature then, it is difficult to get short meaningful programs which illustrate subroutines without their often being a little contrived. We need a program where the same or similar function is repeated at different points in the program.

Example 1

The game of dice ('craps' in the USA) provides a simple example. A pair of dice is thrown twice and the total score on each throw is noted. If the two scores are the

same, the game ends. If they are different, the dice are thrown again. Write a program to simulate the game which prints out the number of throws required to obtain equal scores and what that score was.

Solution

```

10 REM **EQUAL THROWS**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
25 PRINT "DICE GAME SIMULATION"
30 C=1
40 GOSUB 130:REM**FIRST THROW**
50 S1=S
60 GOSUB 130:REM**SECOND THROW**
70 S2=S
80 IF S1=S2 THEN 100
90 C=C+1:GOTO 40
100 PRINT "EQUAL SCORE";S1;"IN";C;"THROWS"
110 END
120 REM **DICE ROLLING SUBROUTINE**
130 D<=RND(6):D2=RND(6)
140 S=D1+D2:RETURN

```

the subroutine produces generally different values of S for the 'main' program

} subroutine

Program 5 Simulation of 'craps'

```

RUN
DICE GAME SIMULATION
EQUAL SCORE 6 IN 5 THROWS
READY.
RUN
DICE GAME SIMULATION
EQUAL SCORE 7 IN 5 THROWS
READY
RUN
DICE GAME SIMULATION
EQUAL SCORE 4 IN 6 THROWS
READY.

```

Exercise 1

- Write a segment of program to print a line of 40 dashes "-----" across the screen
- Write one line of program to print a 'submarine' or $\leq = >$, at any position across the screen or printer where the variable S determines the position.
- Write a program to print on successive lines:
 - a line of dashes;
 - a submarine at any point
 - another line of dashes;
 with the line printing in (i) and (iii) in a subroutine.

Exercise 2

Now you must admit that the solution to Exercise 1 looks like a vessel in a canal, so why not a submarine as we are concerned with subroutines? Instead of battleships in a 2-dimensional sea, we have a submarine in a 1-dimensional canal. Anyway, we have the picture for a simple game.

Write a program to generate a random number between 1 and 36. The submarine is going to take up three positions of the width (37,38,39). Use the random number to print the submarine in random positions along the canal.

Exercise 3

The essence of the game we are going to play with the machine will be clear from Exercise 2. The computer generates a random number and invites you to find the submarine by guessing a number between 1 and 36. If you guess the correct position, i.e. between S and $S+2$ if S is the random number (remember the submarine takes up 3 places in the line), then the machine records a 'hit' and the game ends. If you don't find the submarine, the machine will record a 'miss' and invite you to try again. Write a program to do this.

(We advise you to write a program to give yourself the option to stop playing before you find the submarine, because it is infuriating to have to try every position across the screen just to stop the program running. You could just pull the plug out. and then it would sink!?)

9.4 Searching

The submarine problem gives us a good lead into discussions about searching data. The only methodical way to find the submarine was to search the canal successively position by position starting from one end. How much easier it would have been had the program responded with 'too high' or 'too low', as appropriate, after each guess. No doubt you can immediately think of a procedure for 'homing-in' on the submarine as quickly as possible!

Similarly, if dictionaries, telephone directories, encyclopedias and library catalogues were not arranged in alphabetical order, think how difficult it would be to find the desired information.

But if we've gone to a lot of trouble to sort our data into numerical or alphabetical order, then we need an efficient search technique to find any given item. If we consult a dictionary or telephone directory for an item, we don't start looking at the first page and work methodically through the volume page by page until the item is found. We take a rough guess, e.g. if the name begins with 'P' then we try to open the directory at just over half-way through it, and start looking from that point.

Bisection search

A 'rough' guess is too imprecise a term for a computer. However we can specify guessing points as follows:

- divide the range of items into half and ask 'is the item above or below the half-way mark?'
- if it is below then we define a new range with the middle item now acting as the upper limit;
- if above then the middle item becomes our lower limit;
- either way we discard half the old range and repeat our halving or bisection procedure with the new range.

So the bisection search is, in outline:

Is 7 in the list 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10?

List in order:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	----

Halve list.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	----

Is 7 = middle item? No.

Is 7 < middle item? No.

So 7 is in top half.

Halve list.

6	7	8	9	10
---	---	---	---	----

Is 7 = middle item? No.

Is 7 < middle item? Yes.

Halve list.

6	7	8
---	---	---

Is 7 = middle item? Yes.

So 7 is in list.

That outline illustrates the principle of the bisection search but in practice we need to distinguish between the values of the items in a list and the indexes of those items.

Example 2

An ordered list contains the items A, F, I, M, P, T, U, Z. Use the bisection search procedure to find whether or not P is in the list.

We call P, Query – the value we wish to enquire about:

Index	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Item	A	F	I	M	P	T	U	Z
Start-Index	Low (1)							High (8)
Mid-Index, $\text{Int}(\frac{1+8}{2})=4$				⋮				
				Mid (4)				

Comparisons

is Query = Item (4)? no!
is Query < Item (4)? no!
make Index (4) the new Low

Index		4	5	6	7	8
Item		M	P	T	U	Z
Start-Index		Low (4)		⋮		High (8)
Mid-Index, $\text{Int}(\frac{4+8}{2})=6$				Mid(6)		

Comparisons

is Query = Item (6)? no!
is Query < Item (6)? yes!
make Index(6) the new High

Index	4	5	6
Item	M	P	T
Start-Index	Low(4)	:	High(6)
Mid-Index, $\text{Int}(\frac{4+6}{2}) = 5$		Mid(5)	
Comparison	is Query = Index (5)? yes!		

Figure 6 Bisection search

Exercise 4

Carry out the bisection search procedure on the list in Example 2 but looking for the letter I.

We only had to make 3 comparisons to home-in on the item 'P' in Example 2, but they were a bit long-winded, and the whole procedure may seem to have little advantage over simply searching straight through the list. The effectiveness of the method is not really apparent in short lists. We will demonstrate its power in searching longer lists later, but first we still have some loose ends to tie up.

Some problems with bisection search

(a) How to stop

Example 3

Carry out the same procedure as before, but search for the letter 'Q'.

The method would proceed exactly the same as before as far as the 3rd comparison, so we'll pick up the story there.

Query = Q

Index	4	5	6
Item	M	P	T
Start-Index	Low(4)	:	High(6)
Mid-Index, $\text{Int}(\frac{4+6}{2}) = 5$		Mid(5)	
Comparisons	is Query = Item(5)? no! is Query < Item(5)? no! make Index(5) the new Low		

Index	4	5	6
Item		P	T
Start-Index		Low(5)	High(6)
Mid-Index, $\text{Int}(\frac{5+6}{2}) = 5$		Mid(5)	
Comparisons	is Query = Item(5)? no! is Query < we have done this before?!		

So we don't seem able to stop. Q is not there but we are stuck looking for it between P and T. We have already met the problem of stopping the process in the last example. If the indexes Low and High have moved so close that they are at adjacent positions, and Query is not yet found, then Query is not a member of the list. That is the end and outcome of the search. So the end is either when the Query has been found, or when Low and High occupy adjacent indexes ($\text{High} - \text{Low} = 1$).

(b) How to start

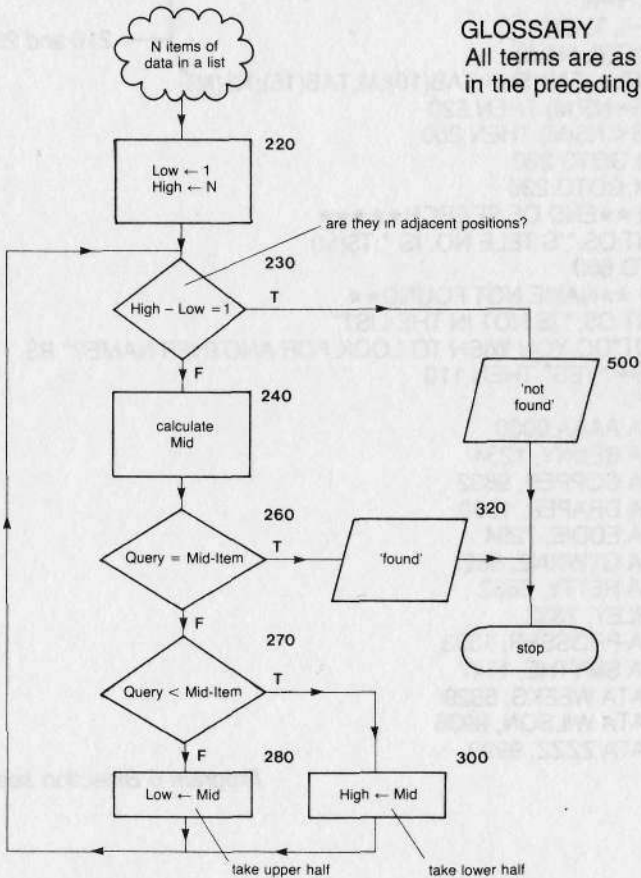
To start the process seemed straightforward enough. We make $\text{Index}(1)=\text{Low}$ and $\text{Index}(N)=\text{High}$. Trouble would occur however if $\text{Item}(1)$ and $\text{Item}(N)$ were not the lowest and highest possible values.

E.g. consider the following list which does not include letters before C or after S:

1	2	3	4	5
C	F	G	P	S
Low				High

If Query was A or B or higher than S, then the process would not work. The easiest solution is to ensure that the items at the ends of the list will always have the extreme values, e.g. in a list of names make $\text{Item}(1)=\text{AAAA}$ and $\text{Item}(N)=\text{ZZZZ}$.

We will now outline the algorithm in flowchart form.



GLOSSARY

All terms are as defined in the preceding text.

Figure 7 Flowchart for bisection search

All we have to do now is write the program:

```
10 REM **BISECTION SEARCH**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 DIM N$(20):DIM T$(20)
40 I=1
45 REM **START OF READ LOOP**
50 READ N$(I),T$(I)
60 IF N$(I)="ZZZZ" THEN 90
70 I=I+1:GOTO 45
90 REM *****
100 N=I:REM*WE ARE USING ZZZZ THIS TIME*
110 REM *****
150 INPUT"QUERY NAME?" QS
200 REM **START OF SEARCH**
210 PRINT;" L";TAB(5); " H";TAB(10); "M";TAB(15);"N$(M)"
220 L=1:H=N
230 IF H-L THEN 490
240 M=INT((L+H)/2)
250 PRINT: L;TAB(5);H;TAB(10);M;TAB(15);N$(M)
260 IF QS=N$(M) THEN 320
270 IF QS<N$(M) THEN 300
280 L=M:GOTO 230
300 H=M:GOTO 230
320 REM **END OF SEARCH*****
330 PRINT QS;"S TELE NO. IS ";T$(M)
350 GOTO 600
490 REM **NAME NOT FOUND**
500 PRINT QS;" IS NOT IN THE LIST"
600 INPUT"DO YOU WISH TO LOOK FOR ANOTHER NAME?" RS
610 IF RS= "YES" THEN 110
620 END
900 DATA AAAA,0000
910 DATA BENNY, 1234
920 DATA COPPER, 9832
930 DATA DRAPER, 1980
940 DATA EDDIE, 7294
950 DATA GYWNNE, 5821
960 DATA HETTY, 8632
970 MORLEY, 7832
980 DATA PROSSER, 1383
990 DATA SMYTHE, 1147
1000 DATA WEEKS, 5529
1010 DATA WILSON, 9936
1020 DATA ZZZZ, 9999
```

210 and 250 are trace print

Program 6 Bisection search program

```

RUN
BISECTION SEARCH
QUERY NAME? MORLEY
L   H   M   N$(M)
1  13   7   HETTY
7  13  10   SMYTHE
7  10   8   MORLEY
MORLEY'S TELE NO. IS 7832

```

DO YOU WISH TO LOOK FOR ANOTHER NAME ? YES

QUERY NAME? WEEK

```

L   H   M   N$(M)
1  13   7   HETTY
7  13  10   SMYTHE
10 13  11   WEEKS

```

WEEK IS NOT IN THE LIST

DO YOU WISH TO LOOK FOR ANOTHER NAME? NO

>

9.5 Tables

When we want to store a lot of information there are various methods open to us. One is lists (see Unit 4), which are sometimes called one-dimensional arrays. A second method is tables or two-dimensional arrays.

Suppose you want to store the following data:

	1st qtr	2nd qtr	3rd qtr	4th qtr
Car sales	20	70	80	40
Servicing	10	14	18	11
Petrol	30	45	50	30

Figure 8 Income for Main Road Service Station (£,000's)

Now you could put this in one list but it would be hard to use. The first four items would be income for car sales, the next four for servicing, etc. Alternatively you would have three lists: one for car sales, one for servicing and one for petrol. But BASIC allows you to have a two dimensional table named by any of the 286 variable names, e.g.:

T(,)

Comparison of lists and tables

Lists need one index to describe a position in the list. Tables need two, which are usually called sub-scripts not indices (or indexes, as we have called them).

List

L(1), L(2), L(3) ... L(I) ...

└── index of this item = 3

Array

A(1,1) A(1,2) A(1,3)
A(2,1) A(2,2) A(2,3)
A(3,1) A(3,2) A(3,3)

— this item needs two sub-scripts:
3 to tell us it is in row 3;
2 to tell us it is in column 2.

Tables

- A table must contain either all string variables, or all numerical variables. (Numbers can of course be stored as strings, and their values found by the VAL-function.)
- We use one of the 286 variable names to describe the table as a whole, e.g. A table, B\$ table, M3\$ table.

Generally, a table comprises:

	col.1	col.2	col.3	col.4
row 1	r1c1	r1c2	r1c3	....
row 2	r2c1	r2c2	r2c3	....
row 3	r3c1	r3c2	r3c3	....
etc	....	....	....	....

Figure 9 The rows and columns of a table

For the service station data, T needs 3 rows and four columns and so contains 12 items:

T(1,1) T(1,2) T(1,3) T(1,4)
T(2,1) T(2,2) T(2,3) T(2,4)
T(3,1) T(3,2) T(3,3) T(3,4)

So

T(2,1) = 10

T(3,3) = 50 etc.

This is very similar to the idea of tables which you have previously met. There we said that a file consists of a series of records each of which consists of fields. In table form this would look like:

	Field 1	Field 2
	Name	Telephone number
Record 1	BENNY	1234
Record 2	COPPER	9823
Record 3	DRAPER	1850
Record 4	EDDIE	7294

Or, more generally:

	Field 1	Field 2	Field 3	etc
Record 1	R1F1	R1F2	R1F3	....
Record 2	R2F1	R2F2	R2F3	....
Record 3	R3F1	R3F2	R3F3	....
etc	....	....	....	....

If the telephone numbers table is called T\$ then the individual items will be labelled:

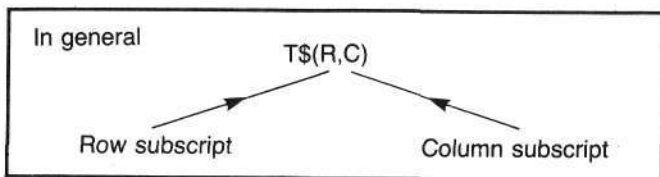
	Field 1	Field 2
	Name	Telephone number
Record 1	T\$(1,1)=BENNY	T\$(1,2)=1234
Record 2	T\$(2,1)=COPPER	T\$(2,2)=9823
Record 3	T\$(3,1)=DRAPER	T\$(3,2)=1950
Record 4	T\$(4,1)=EDDIE	T\$(4,2)=7294

- The whole table is called T\$ table.
- Each item in the table is described by two subscripts. Thus 1950 (3rd row, 2nd column) is

T\$(3,2)

- The 3 and 2 describe the position of item T\$(3,2), not its value. Its value is 1950. So we say

T\$(3,2) = 1950



Example 4

The N\$-table overleaf has 9 values as shown. What are their variable names?

	C	1	2	3
R				
1		BENNY	COPPER	DRAPER
2		EDDIE	GWYNNE	HETTY
3		MORLEY	PROSSER	SMYTHE

N\$(,)

Solution

BENNY = N\$(1,1) COPPER = N\$(1,2) DRAPER = N\$(1,3)

EDDIE = N\$(2,1) GWYNNE = N\$(2,2) HETTY = N\$(2,3)

MORLEY = N\$(3,1) PROSSER = N\$(3,2) SMYTHE = N\$(3,3)

SAQ 3

In the following A\$ table identify the variables and their values as in Example 4.

ARCHER	BENNY	COPPER
DRAPER	EDDIE	FRAME
GWYNNE	HETTY	KEMP
LAMB	MORLEY	NOAKES
PROSSER	SMYTHE	TAIT

Tables and nested loops

If FOR. . . NEXT loops and lists seemed to be made for each other, then even more so do nested FOR. . . NEXT loops and tables seem complementary.

For example, suppose you want to read:

ARCHER,BENNY,COPPER,DRAPER,EDDIE,FRAME,GWYNNE,HETTY,
KEMP,LAMB,MORLEY,NOAKES,PROSSER,SMYTHE,TAIT,WEEKS

into a table, N\$, with 4 rows and 4 columns. (We need a string array because we are storing string data.) This can be done with a READ statement in two nested loops:

```
60 FOR I=1 TO 4
90 FOR J=1 TO 4
80 READ N$(I,J)
90 NEXT J
100 NEXT I
```

This process is carried out in full by lines 10 to 100 of Program 7.

It's all very well to store the value in a table, but of course we cannot see the result of this until we print it out. The second half of the program prints the table values out in a column with I and J accompanying them so that you can identify clearly how I and J are used.

```

10 REM **TABLE READ AND PRINT**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 DIM N$(20,5),
40 REM**READ ROUTINE*****
60 FOR I=1 TO 4
70 FOR J=1 TO 4
80 READ N$(I,J)
90 NEXT J
100 NEXT I
110 REM**PRINT ROUTINE*****
115 PRINT "I", "J", "N$(I,J)"
120 PRINT _____ rows
140 FOR J=1 TO 4 _____ columns
150 PRINT; I, J, N$(I,J)
160 NEXT J
180 NEXT I
190 GOTO 270
240 REM*****
250 DATA ARCHER,BENNY,COPPER,DRAPER,EDDIE,FRAME,GWYNNE,HETTY
260 DATA KEMP,LAMB,MORLEY,NOAKES,PROSSER,SMYTHE,TAIT,WEEKS
270 END

```

DIM statement for 2-D array.
We are asking for space for 20 rows and 5 columns.

Program 7 Reading data into a 4 x 4 array.

RUN
DATA ARRAY

I	J	N\$(I,J)
1	1	ARCHER
1	2	BENNY
1	3	COPPER
1	4	DRAPER
2	1	EDDIE
2	2	FRAME
2	3	GWYNNE
2	4	HETTY
3	1	KEMP
3	2	LAMB
3	3	MORLEY
3	4	NOAKES
4	1	PROSSER
4	2	SMYTHE
4	3	TAIT
4	4	WEEKS

SAQ 4

The following amendments are made to Program 7. Write out what the output table will look like.

```
60 FOR I=1 TO 3
70 FOR J=1 TO 5
130 FOR I=1 TO 3
140 FOR J=1 TO 5
```

Table output

The output of Program 7 is not very satisfactory since we want to see the table in table form. To do this we delete line 115 and insert a new print routine:

```
130 FOR I=1 TO 5
140 FOR J=1 TO 3
150 PRINT TAB(10*(J-1));N$(I,J);
160 NEXT J
170 PRINT
180 NEXT I
190 GOTO 270
```

the first column starts at position $1-1=0$

columns 10 characters wide

Program 8

The output then is:

ARCHER	BENNY	COPPER
DRAPER	EDDIE	FRAME
GWYNNE	HETTY	KEMP
LAMB	MORLEY	NOAKES
PROSSER	SMYTHE	TAIT

Assignment 9

1. A salesman has 4 product lines. The value (in £) of his firm orders for one week are shown in the table.

day \ product	1	2	3	4	totals
1	500	300	20	25	e
2	600	700	40	0	f
3	200	550	60	20	g
4	250	450	100	5	h
5	400	200	100	11	i
totals	a	b	c	d	t

Write a program which will help him analyse his week's work by giving:

- (i) his day totals (e,f,g,h,i)
- (ii) his product totals (a,b,c,d)
- (iii) his overall weekly total (t).

2. Write a program to extend the submarine game to a 10×10 grid. If the guess is close to the submarine then the program should give a 'near miss' clue. You decide what is meant by 'close'.

Objectives of Unit 9

Now that you have completed this Unit, check that you are able to:

- Use the interchange sort (manually) on a set of data
- Write two nested program loops to perform the interchange sort
- Follow GOSUB in programs
- Write GOSUBS into programs
- Use the bisection search (manually) on a set of data
- Write a program for the bisection search
- Put data into two dimensional arrays
- Write a program to read data into a two dimensional array
- Write a program to print data out of a two dimensional array
- Write a program to find the row sums and the column sums in a two dimensional array

Answers to SAQ's and Exercises

SAQ 1

```
0 6 4 1 2 3 7 8
0 1 6 4 2 3 7 8
0 1 2 6 4 3 7 8
0 1 2 3 6 4 7 8
0 1 2 3 4 6 7 8
0 1 2 3 4 6 7 8
0 1 2 3 4 6 7 8
```

FINAL SORTED LIST

```
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
```

SAQ 2

- (a) $B = 1/25$ (Shown as $4E-2$ — i.e. 0.04)
- (b) $B = 9$ (GOSUB is not used in this case.)

Exercise 1

```
(a) 10 FOR I=1 TO 40
    20 PRINT "-";
    30 NEXT I
    40 PRINT
```

Program 9

or in one line:

```
FOR I=1 TO 40: PRINT "-";:NEXT I:PRINT
```

```
(b) PRINT TAB(S); "<=>"
```

```
(c) 10 INPUT S
    20 GOSUB 100
    30 PRINT TAB(S); "<=>"
    40 GOSUB 100
    50 END
    100 FOR I=1 TO 39 PRINT "-";:NEXT I:PRINT
    110 RETURN
```

Program 10

The value that we give S will determine the position of the submarine along the canal, and we get a picture like:

RUN

```
-----
<=>
-----
```

READY.

Because the Commodore 64 puts an automatic line feed in when the end of the 'bank' is drawn, we will stop it at character position 39, instead of 40.

Exercise 2

```
10 REM **SUBMARINE**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
50 S=INT(36*RND(1)+1)
60 GOSUB 510
70 PRINT TAB(S); "<=>"
80 GOSUB 510
90 END
500 REM ** PRINT SUBROUTINE**
510 FOR I=1 TO 39 PRINT "-";:NEXT I:PRINT
520 RETURN
```

Program 11

RUN

```
-----
<=>
-----
```

RUN

```
-----
<=>
-----
```

Exercise 3

```
10 REM **SUBMARINE**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 REM **PRINT CHALLENGE**
40 GOSUB 300 -1
50 PRINT "A NUMBER FROM 1 TO 36 MIGHT FIND ME"
60 GOSUB 300 -2 subroutine used 8 times
70 REM **RANDOM POSITION OF SUB**
80 S=INT(36*RND(1)+1)
90 PRINT
100 INPUT"TRY ANOTHER NUMBER?"
110 IF X<S THEN 190
120 IF X>S+2 THEN 190
130 REM **A HIT**
140 GOSUB 300 -3
150 PRINT TAB(S);"HIT"
160 GOSUB 300 -4
170 GOTO 320
180 REM **A MISS**
190 GOSUB 300 -5
200 PRINT "YOU MISSED"
210 GOSUB 300 -6
220 INPUT"DO YOU STILL WANT TO PLAY?"R$
230 IF R$="YES" THEN 90
240 PRINT "SPOILSPORT!! I WAS HERE":PRINT
250 GOSUB 300 -7
260 PRINT TAB(S);"<=>"
270 GOSUB 300 -8
280 GOTO 320
290 REM **PRINT SUBROUTINE**
300 FOR I=1 TOP 39 PRINT "-";:NEXT I:PRINT ]—— subroutine prints just one
310 RETURN ] line of dashes
320 END
```

Program 12

```
RUN
SUBMARINE GAME
-----
A NUMBER FROM 1 TO 36 MIGHT FIND ME
-----
TRY ANOTHER NUMBER? 27
-----
YOU MISSED
-----
DO YOU STILL WANT TO PLAY? YES
TRY ANOTHER NUMBER? 30
-----
YOU MISSED
-----
```

DO YOU STILL WANT TO PLAY? NO
SPOILSPORT!! I WAS HERE

<->

READY.

Exercise 4

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
A	F	I	M	P	T	U	Z

⋮
Mid (4)

Query = Item (4)? No.
Query < Item (4)? Yes.
make Index (4) the new high

A	F	I	M
1	2	3	4

⋮

$$\text{Mid-Index} = \text{Int}\left(\frac{1+4}{2}\right) = 2$$

Query = Item (2)? No.
Query < Item (2)? No.
make Index (2) the new low

2	3	4
F	I	M

⋮

Query = Item (3)? Yes.
Therefore I is in list

SAQ 3

A\$(1,1) = ARCHER

A\$(2,1) = DRAPER

A\$(3,1) = GWYNNE

A\$(4,1) = LAMB

A\$(5,1) = PROSSER

A\$(1,2) = BENNY

A\$(2,2) = EDDIE

A\$(3,2) = HETTY

A\$(4,2) = MORLEY

A\$(5,2) = SMYTHE

A\$(1,3) = COPPER

A\$(2,3) = FRAME

A\$(3,3) = KEMP

A\$(4,3) = NOAKES

A\$(5,3) = TAIT

SAQ 4

RUN	I	J	N\$(I,J)
	1	1	ARCHER
	1	2	BENNY
	1	3	COPPER
	1	4	DRAPER
	1	5	EDDIE
	2	1	FRAME
	2	2	GWYNNE
	2	3	HETTY
	2	4	KEMP
	2	5	LAMB
	3	1	MORLEY
	3	2	NOAKES
	3	3	PROSSER
	3	4	SMYTHE
	3	5	TAIT

(Note that WEEKS was not read into the table. A 5×3 table will only read the first 15 items.)

UNIT 10

File-handling

10.1	Saving programs	256
10.2	LPRINT	256
10.3	Sequential files	258
10.4	Create and access	258
10.5	Files in flowcharts	261
10.6	Sorting filed data	263
10.7	Merge	265
10.8	Deletion	271
	Postscript	272
	Assignment 10	274
	Objectives of Unit 10	274
	Answers to SAQ's and Exercises	275

10.1 Saving programs

The course so far has largely been concerned with a system of only 3 devices, viz. keyboard, processor and monitor. That system is volatile, i.e. when you switch off the power your programming efforts are lost. If you wish to run a program again you will have to type it in again. But all microcomputers provide facilities for saving a program on ordinary cassette tapes. Once the program is on cassette, you can switch off your computer and still be able to re-run the program whenever you want in the future.

There are two occasions on which you will wish to store programs:

- (a) when you have a complete program that you want to keep; and
- (b) to save part of a program which you are developing. If you save every time you have a screen-full, you will never lose too much when you have an accident with the part currently in your computer. When the complete program has been entered and saved, you can always erase your intermediate part-programs.

The process of saving

First you have to give the program a name which the computer will use to locate your program. Systems differ in how long and what characters may be included in the file-name. Up to 16 characters are allowed on the Commodore 64.

Suppose you want to save a program called PROGNAME. The procedure will be:

- Connect the Commodore 1530(C2N) cassette tape recorder to your computer.
- Key SAVE "PROGNAME" on your computer and touch RETURN.
- Start the tape recorder running in record mode. (Touch play and record)
- The television screen will go blank (light blue).
- Once the program is saved, turn off the recorder.

The process of loading

Having saved a program you may wish to use it at a later date. It can be loaded back in to the machine with a LOAD command. A typical interaction would be:

Either

- Connect the Commodore 1530(C2N) cassette recorder to your computer.
- Key LOAD "PROGNAME" and touch RETURN.
- Set the tape recorder running in play mode.
- Switch off the recorder when loading is complete.

Or

- Connect the recorder to your computer.
- Key LOAD "" and press RETURN.
- Set the recorder running in play mode.
- Switch off the recorder when loading is complete.

10.2 Printing to a printer

If you wish to list a program to the printer, you need to warn the printer that information is coming. This is done with the OPEN command.

OPEN logical file number, device number

For the VIC-151 printer, the device number is 4 or 5. The logical file number can be any number you decide upon in the range 1 to 255. You can change the number to suit

yourself, provided you stick to it for you whole set of commands.

OPEN 1,4

will do

We next need to transfer control from the computer to the printer. This is done with the CMD command.

CMD logical file number.

So we need

CMD 1

to be consistent

The computer will print READY on the printer paper. The instruction LIST will now cause the program to be listed on the printer rather than the monitor screen.

We now need PRINT #

PRINT# logical file number

to close the line to the printer (or 'unlisten' it, in jargon!) so we will write

PRINT#1

Note that you must spell out PRINT# letter by letter—you cannot use the ? symbol to stand for PRINT. Finally you need to close the file after printing:

CLOSE logical number

So we need

CLOSE 1

Our sequence of commands is

OPEN 1,4

CMD 1

LIST

PRINT#1

CLOSE 1

This corresponds to the LLIST command available on some microcomputers.

It is possible to print out information to the printer during the run of a program.

You must open the file as before, and then you can use PRINT# in the same way that would normally use PRINT to display to the screen.

For example:

```
40 PRINT#1, "SUBMARINE GAME"
```

will cause SUBMARINE GAME to be displayed on the printer. Don't forget to CLOSE 1 at the end of the printer display part of the program to 'tidy up' and close the file.

This corresponds to the LPRINT command available in some forms of BASIC.

These instructions correspond to the handling of tape and disc files, as explained in subsequent sections of this Unit.

10.3 Sequential files

We have used the term 'file' several times throughout the course, to mean 'collection of data items'. However, when a program is saved we refer to its having a file-name, and we think of both programs and data as files.

Data

So far we have either input data from the keyboard during the course of a program's execution, or read from DATA statements which formed part of the program. On several occasions we have made a program handle different sets of data by over-writing or substituting new DATA statements for old ones. This latter method can be quite effective for small computer systems without file-handling facilities. But if we wish to handle collections of data of meaningful size, we need the facility to be able to store this data on either tape or disk. We need to be able to store new data on a file on cassette or disk and to read data from these files to use in program runs.

Incompatibility of systems

Most of the main micro-computer systems differ from each other in the finer details of how file-handling is achieved. We will concentrate on the general principles as far as possible. Our examples will be kept as simple as possible, but will relate to the Commodore 64.

Sequential files

As a simplification we shall only consider sequential file-handling. Sequential files are where we read in every item of data from the file in the sequence in which it was originally created. This is, of course, the only type of file that you can use on a tape storage system since a tape has to be read sequentially.

10.4 Create and access

Create refers to a program's activity of writing data from the program in the computer's memory to a peripheral device: in our case either tape or disk. Access is when data is read from the peripheral device to the program in memory.

Because you cannot 'see' what's stored on tape or disk, the activities of create and access must be complementary. You do not know whether your program to create has been successful until you've written an access program to read the data back in. Only then can you see it on the screen or printer.

In order to keep this Unit as simple as possible, we shall keep create and access as separate as possible.

Create

To create a new file, or to write into an existing one, we have to tell the computer:

- the name of the file;
- that we wish to OPEN the file for writing to it;
- that we write out to it;
- then we CLOSE it;

Notice that:

- during the create run, the computer needs a temporary number for that file to identify it during execution;
- that between OPEN and CLOSE, the computer is under control of the tape recorder.

So creating a program is like this on the Commodore 64:

```
1000 REM **CREATE A DATA-FILE**
1010 OPEN 1,1,1,"DATA"
```



```
1080 CLOSE 1
```

Notes

OPEN 1,1,1 ← tells the computer to open a file in output mode.

↑ tells the computer to use the cassette recorder

↑ our internal (to the program) file number which we will use to refer to the file as long as it is open. The Commodore 64 allows us a range of file numbers (0-255), but we stick to 1 in our examples.

"DATA1" the file-name on the cassette or disk under which the data will be stored.

CLOSE1 this closes the file that we gave the file number 1.

So let's see this in use.

Example 1a

Write a program to create a data file of 10 names.

Solution

```
1000 REM **CREATE A DATA FILE**
1010 OPEN 1,1,1,"DATA1"
1020 REM *****
1030 PRINT "TYPE DATA (ZZZZ TO END)"
1040 ONPUT "DATA1";A$
1050 PRINT#1,A$
1060 IF A$<>"ZZZZ" THEN 1040
1070 PRINT "DATA1 HAS BEEN SAVED"
1080 CLOSE 1
```

Program 1 Create a data file

before pressing RETURN
the recorder would have to be
activated (PLAY/RECORD)

```
RUN
DATA1 HAS BEEN SAVED
```

and switched off here.

The only new bit here is PRINT#,A\$. This writes the value A\$ into the file 1. (You can now see why we wanted a number for the file to use during the program.)

At the end of all that the 10 names (ARCHER, BENNY, etc) are all on the tape under the file-name "DATA1". If you switched off the computer, they would still be there.

Access

Now you want the data back to use. For this you need an access program. This has the following structure:

```
10 REM ★★ACCESS A DATA FILE★★
30 OPEN 1,1,0,"DATA1"
50 IF A$="ZZZZ" THEN 80
```



```
80 CLOSE 1
```

Notes

OPEN 1,1,0 ← tells the computer to open the file in input mode ("0" for input)
 ↑ tells the computer to use the cassette recorder.
 ↑ our internal (to the program) file number.

"DATA1" the name of the file that the computer is to look for on the tape or disk.

IF A\$="ZZZZ" we are using a dummy record to signal the end of file

CLOSE 1 tells the computer to close the file number 1.

In use the program works as follows:

Example 1b

Write a program to access the data file "DATA1" which was created in Example 1a and to print out the 10 names in the file.

```
10 REM ★★ACCESS A DATA FILE★★
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 OPEN 1,1,0,"DATA1"
40 INPUT#1,A$
50 IF A$="ZZZZ" THEN 80
60 PRINT A$
70 GOTO 40
80 CLOSE 1
```

Program 2 Access a data file

RUN _____ the recorder would have to be activated (PLAY only)

ARCHER
BENNY
COPPER
DRAPER
EDDIE
FRAME
GWYNNE
HETTY
KEMP
LAMB

_____ and switched off here.
READY.

Once we have opened the file, we input the data in it with:

```
40 INPUT #1,A$
```

Exercises preamble

A fairly serious defect of Programs 1 and 2 is that they both work only for a specifically named file, viz, "DATA1". Now if a file-handling program is going to be of general use, we don't want to have to edit the program just to create or access data from a file of different names. We can overcome this by entering the file name into a variable store location. F\$, in the following example.

```
INPUT"NAME OF THE DATA FILE?"F$  
OPEN 1,1,0,F$
```

Let's write some programs which remedy this point.

Exercise 1

Modify Program 1 to write a sequence of names to a file directly from the keyboard, and allow the file thus created to have a variable name.

Exercise 2

Modify Program 2 to access the file created in Exercise 1 and to print out the list.

Exercise 3

Write a program to access the file created in Exercise 1 and to search through it to find and print out all those names whose initial letter is 'N'.

Exercise 4

Write a program to access the file created in Exercise 1 and to enter the names into a list, and to print out the list with indexes.

10.5 Files in flowcharts

The solution to Exercise 4 holds the key to the development of future programs. It's our old friend the list again, which makes all the difference! Having got the data into list form we can do much more with it. Before we do, however, let's try to summarise the position we've reached.

The program solution to Exercise 1 may be summarised as in Figure 1.

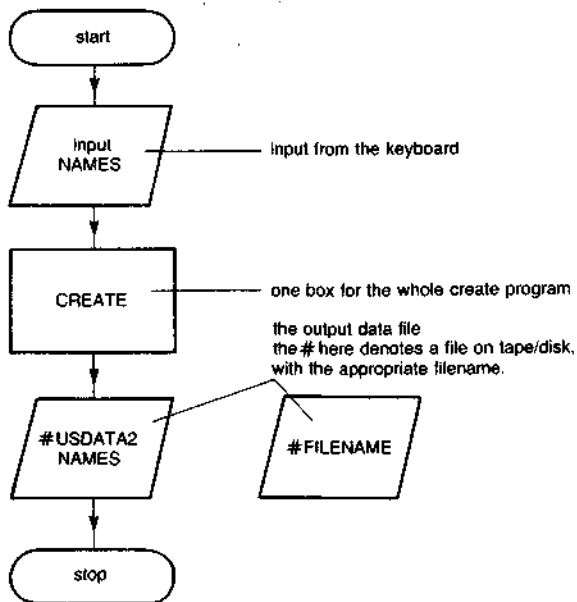


Figure 1 Flowchart for 'Create a file'

The flowchart solution for Exercise 4 is given in Figure 2.

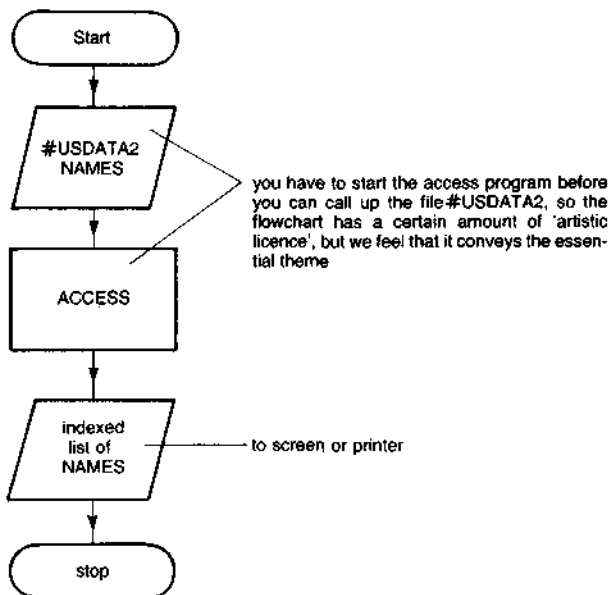


Figure 2 Access a file and index as a list

10.6 Sorting filed data

The list of names in answer to Exercise 2, is just asking to be sorted! We have an access routine and we developed a sort of routine in Unit 8. All we have to do now is to link the two together. Before we do let's sketch the algorithm.

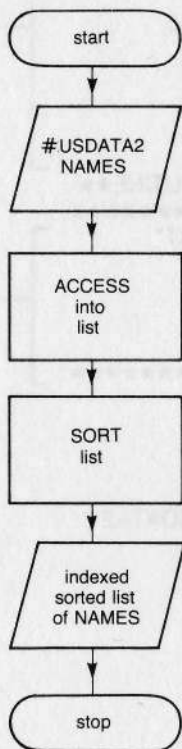


Figure 3 Access and sort

The program is simply three routines (access, sort and print) that you have already met, joined together.

```
10 REM **ACCESS A DATA FILE**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 DIM X$(50)
40 C=1
50 INPUT "NAME OF THE DATA FILE";G$
60 OPEN 1,1,0,G$
70 INPUT#1,A$
80 X$(C)=A$
90 IF A$="ZZZZ" THEN 120
100 C=C+1
110 GOTO 70
120 CLOSE 1
130 REM **END OF ACCESS**
```

access routine

```

140 REM **N IS LENGTH OF LIST**
150 N=C
200 REM *****
210 REM **SORT ROUTINE**
220 FOR K=1 TO N-1
230 FOR L=K+1 TO N
240 IF X$(L)>=X$(K) THEN 280
250 T$=X$(L)
260 X$(L)=X$(K)
270 X$(K)=T$
280 NEXT L
290 NEXT K
300 REM **END OF SORT ROUTINE**
400 REM *****
410 PRINT "FINAL SORTED LIST"
420 FOR P=1 TO N
430 PRINT P,X$(P)
440 NEXT P
450 PRINT
500 REM *****

```

} — sort routine

} — print routine

Program 3 Access and sort

```

RUN
NAME OF THE DATA FILE? USDATA2
FINAL SORTED LIST

```

```

1          ASHTON
2          BANKS
3          BARR
4          BURNS
5          CAREY
6          COMPTON
7          DOYLE
8          EDGE
9          GRANT
10         HOWSON
11         ICKERY
12         NASH
13         NEILS
14         NUNN
15         PRIEST
16         PURVISS
17         SCALES
18         SHIPTON
19         TEELE
20         TURNER
21         WATERS
22         WATTS
23         WELLS
24         WEST

```

Exercise 5

We don't necessarily wish to print out the list as we did for demonstration purposes in Program 3, but we definitely would want the sorted data to be saved in a data file for future use.

Modify Program 3 to write the sorted data list to a file, SDATA, say.

How will you test that it is successful?

Exercise 6

Having created a file of sorted data you will sooner or later wish to search through it quickly.

Combine the list-access routine of Program 3 with the bisection search routine of Unit 8 to make this file-search utility program.

Exercise 7

Write a program to access a file and input the data into a table.

You are in charge of the dimensions of the table and the data you use.

10.7 Merge

We've created, accessed, sorted and searched files. What else is there to do? Well, very seldom does a data file which is doing useful work, stay static for long. We usually want to add or delete items, or make amendments to it. The rest of this Unit will be spent considering how to add and delete items to and from a file.

No doubt you have already visualised how you would go about these tasks, and we hope that you follow up your ideas. We will develop a fairly standard approach. To add items to a file we will merge two files together. You've done this if you have ever played cards. You have a hand which you have sorted and have spread out fan-like before you. You pick up another card and slot it into its appropriate place in your hand.

The process of merging involves a master file (sorted into order) and a list of new items to go in (also sorted into order).

Master file

AMES
COLES
GREGG
HOPE
IVES
JAMES
MUNN
PRICE
ROSS
SYMES

New items (=work file)

DAVIS

LAMB
NORRIS
PEARCE

TATE

But before we develop a program for the merge, we must anticipate and remove one problem: the extremes of the master file. Both in the bisection search (Unit 8) and in Exercise 6 we found it necessary to ensure that the master file included the extremes. So we now develop a program routine to ensure that this will be so.

The extremes of the master file

The following routine takes any sorted file (G\$) and places "AAAA" as the first item. We do not need to add "ZZZZ" as the last as the Commodore 64 uses a dummy record as the end of the file marker already.

```
10 REM **ACCESS A DATA FILE**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 DIM MS(50)
40 C=1
50 MS(C)="AAAA"
60 INPUT "NAME OF THE DATA FILE";G$
70 OPEN 1,1,0,G$
80 C=C+1
90 INPUT#1,AS
100 MS(C)=AS
110 IF AS="ZZZZ" THEN 120
120 GOTO 80
130 CLOSE 1
140 REM *****
150 N=C
160 REM *****
170 FOR I=1 TO N
180 PRINT I,MS(I)
190 NEXT I
```

lowest item made AAAA before accessing the file.

highest made ZZZZ after closing the file

Program 4 Adding AAAA to a file

RUN
NAME OF THE DATA FILE? SDATA3

1	AAAA	lowest item
2	AMES	original file SDATA3
3	COLES	
4	GREGG	
5	HOPE	
6	IVES	
7	JAMES	
8	MUNN	
9	PRICE	
10	ROSS	
11	SYMES	
12	ZZZZ	highest item

The merge program

A picture of the overall process is shown in Figure 4. Once again there is a certain amount of artistic license. The program does not really have two starting points, but as you will see when the program is run, there are two quite distinct entry points for the two input files.

The essential point to remember is that SDATA3 and SDATA4 have been sorted into alphabetical order before entry into the program. This was done using programs developed earlier in this Unit.

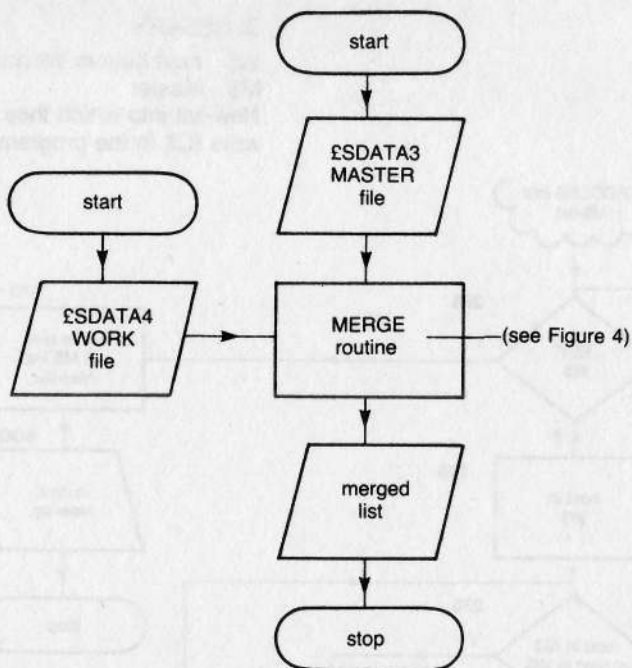


Figure 4 Merge routine in outline

The merge routine

The central idea is:

- if the item in the Master file is lower in order than the item from the Work file
- then write the item from the Master file into the New file;
- otherwise write the item from the Work file into the New file.

GLOSSARY

W\$ next item in Work file

M\$ Master

New-list into which they both write (C\$ in the program)

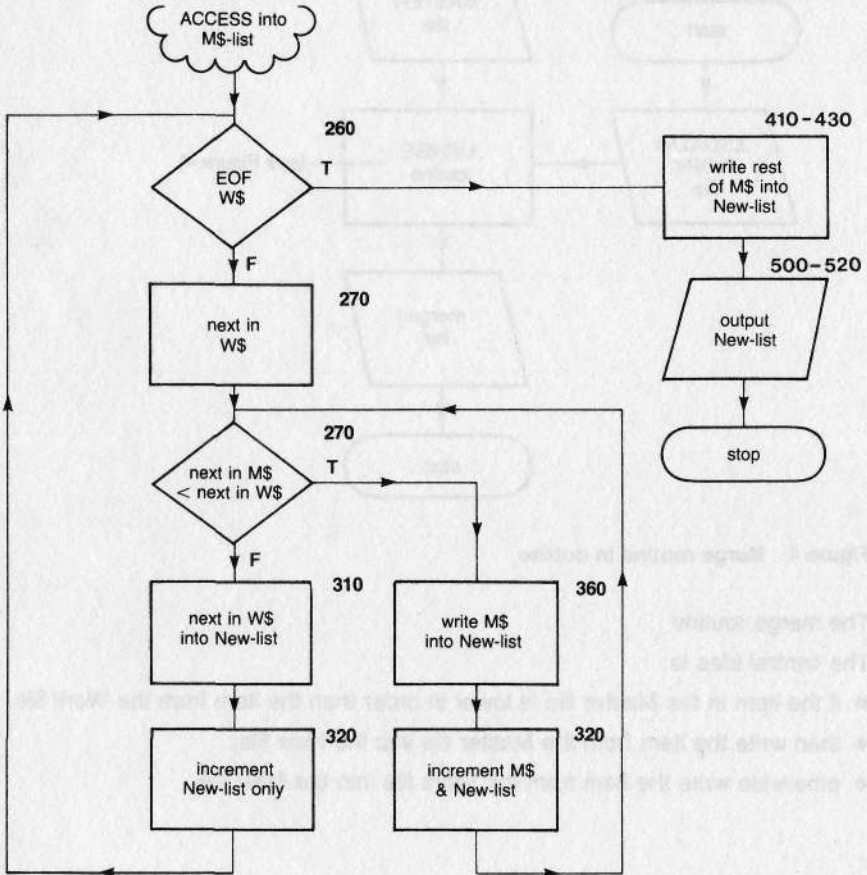


Figure 5 The merge routine in detail

```

10 REM **ACCESS A DATA FILE**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 DIM M$(50)
35 DIM C$(50)-----C$ will be the New-list
40 C=1
50 M$(C)="AAAA"
60 INPUT "NAME OF THE DATA FILE";G$
70 OPEN 1,1,0,G$
80 C=C+1
90 INPUT#1,A$
100 M$(C)=A$
110 IF A$="ZZZZ" THEN 130
120 GOTO 80
130 CLOSE 1
140 REM *****
150 N=C
160 REM *****
170 FOR I=1 TO N
180 PRINT I,M$(I)
190 NEXT I
200 REM **MERGE**
210 I=1
220 K=1
230 INPUT "NAME OF THE WORK FILE";H$
240 OPEN 1,1,0,H$
250 INPUT#1,W$
260 IF W$="ZZZZ" THEN 350
270 IF M$(I)<W$ THEN 310
280 C$(K)=W$
290 K=K+1
300 GOTO 250
310 C$(K)=M$(I)
320 K=K+1
330 I=I+1
340 GOTO 270
350 CLOSE 1
360 C$(K)=M$(I)
370 K=K+1
380 I=I+1
390 IF I<=N THEN 360
400 REM *****
550 FOR L=2 TO K-2-----
510 PRINT L,C$(L)
520 NEXT L

```

accessing Master file, M\$(c) and inserting AAAA and ZZZZ at ends

print out of Master file before merge

merge

K is one too high at 390 and we don't want "ZZZZ" either; hence K-2

Program 5 The complete merge program

Runs of merge program

First using SDATA3 as the Master file:

RUN

NAME OF THE DATA FILE? SDATA3

1	AAAA
2	AMES
3	COLES
4	GREGG
5	HOPE
6	IVES
7	JAMES
8	MUNN
9	PRICE
10	ROSS
11	SYMES
12	ZZZZ

NAME OF THE WORK FILE? SDATA4

2	AMES
3	COLES
4	DAVIS
5	GREGG
6	HOPE
7	IVES
8	JAMES
9	LAMB
10	MUNN
11	NORRIS
12	PEARCE
13	PRICE
14	ROSS
15	SYMES
16	TATE

Second using SDATA4 as the Master file:

RUN

NAME OF THE DATA FILE? SDATA4

1	AAAA
2	DAVIS
3	LAMB
4	NORRIS
5	PEARCE
6	TATE
7	ZZZZ

NAME OF THE WORK FILE? SDATA3

2	AMES
3	COLES
4	DAVIS
5	GREGG
6	HOPE
7	IVES
8	JAMES
9	LAMB
10	MUNN
11	NORRIS
12	PEARCE
13	PRICE
14	ROSS
15	SYMES
16	TATE

We have run the program using data files SDATA3 and 4 as Master file. You can see that it doesn't really matter which one we call the Master and which the Work file. (It is interesting to note that entering the smaller of the two first (SDATA4) takes up slightly less room in the memory.)

If we wanted the New-list in a data file, we would have to add a create routine to the end of the program, instead of 500-520, perhaps.

10.8 Deletion

Deletion may seem a very different process from addition and merging but it can be achieved by modifying the merge program only very slightly.

First, the items for deletion are collected into a Work file.

Then:

- if the item in the Master list = that in the Work list then do not write the Master list item into the New list;
- otherwise do write the Master list item into the New list.

We will not give a flowchart in this case, but hope that you can follow the changes to the merge program as shown in the delete program below. In this case a moment's thought will convince you that the Work and Master lists are no longer interchangeable.

Master file (SDATA)

AHSTON
 BANKS
 BARR
 BURNS
 CAREY
 COMPTON
 DOYLE
 EDGE
 GRANT
 HOWSON
 ICKERY
 NASH
 NEILS
 NUNN
 PRIEST
 PURVISS
 SCALES
 SHIPTON
 TEELE
 TURNER
 WATERS
 WATTS
 WELLS
 WEST

Work file (SDATA5)

= deletions to be made

BURNS
 DOYLE
 NASH
 TEELE
 WATTS

```

10  REM **ACCESS A DATA FILE**
20  PRINT CHR$(147)
30  DIM M$(50)
35  DIM MS$(50)
40  C=1
50  M$(C)="AAAA"
60  INPUT "NAME OF THE DATA FILE";G$
70  OPEN 1,1,0,G$
80  C=C+1
90  INPUT # 1, A$
100 M$(C)=A$
110 IF A$="ZZZZ" THEN 130
120 GOTO 80
130 CLOSE 1
140 REM *****
150 N=C
160 REM *****
170 FOR I=1 TO N
180 PRINT I,M$(I)
190 NEXT I
200 REM **DELETE**
210 I=1
220 K=1
230 INPUT "NAME OF THE WORK FILE";H$

```

```

240 OPEN 1,1,0,HS
250 INPUT#1,WS
260 IF WS="ZZZZ" THEN 370
270 IF MS(I)=WS THEN 350
310 CS(K)=MS(I)
320 K=K+1
330 I=I+1
340 GOTO 270
350 I=I+1
360 GOTO 250
370 CLOSE 1
380 CS(K)=MS(I)
390 K=K+1
400 I=I+1
410 IF I<=N THEN 380
420 REM *****
430 FOR L=2 TO K-2
440 PRINT L,CS(L)
450 NEXT L

```

if Master item = Work item
do nothing, just go for the
next Master item
otherwise write Master item
into New list

RUN
NAME OF THE DATA FILE? SDATA

- 1 AAAA
- 2 ASHTON
- 3 BANKS
- 4 BARR
- 5 BURNS
- 6 CAREY
- 7 COMPTON
- 8 DOYLE
- 9 EDGE
- 10 GRANT
- 11 HOWSON
- 12 ICKERY
- 13 NASH
- 14 NEILS
- 15 NUNN
- 16 PRIEST
- 17 PURVISS
- 18 SCALES
- 19 SHIPTON
- 20 TEELE
- 21 TURNER
- 22 WATERS
- 23 WATTS
- 24 WELLS
- 25 WEST
- 26 ZZZZ

Master list

NAME OF THE WORK FILE? SDATA5

2	ASHTON
3	BANKS
4	BARR
5	CAREY
6	COMPTON
7	EDGE
8	GRANT
9	HOWSON
10	ICKERY
11	NEILS
12	NUNN
13	PRIEST
14	PURVISS
15	SCALES
16	SHIPTON
17	TURNER
18	WATERS
19	WELLS
20	WEST

New list ... the old Master with
five items deleted

Assignment 10

- Write a program to create a library Master loan file in alphabetical order by borrower's name, with records of the form:
BORROWER DATE DUE BOOK TITLE
 - Write a routine to merge new records with this Master file.
 - Write a routine to access and search through the file to find those books which are overdue.
- Write a program to access a table of numerical values, to complete row and column sums, and to create a new file to include this extra information.

Objectives of Unit 10

Check that you are able to write programs in a form suitable for your micro-computer to:

Create a data file (open for output)

Access a data file (open for input)

Sort a data file

Add new items to a data file (merge)

Delete items from a data file

Answers to Exercises

Exercise 1

```
1000 REM **CREATE A DATA FILE**
1010 INPUT "NAME OF DATE FILE";F$
1020 OPEN 1,1,1,F$
1030 REM **INPUT DATA**
1040 PRINT "TYPE DATA (ZZZZ TO END)"
1050 INPUT "NEXT NAME";N$
1060 PRINT#1,N$
1070 IF N$<>"ZZZZ" THEN 1050
1080 PRINT F$;" HAS BEEN SAVED"
1090 CLOSE 1
```

Program 7

```
NAME OF THE DATA FILE? USDATA2
NEXT NAME? BARR
NEXT NAME? SHIPTON
NEXT NAME? HOWSON
NEXT NAME? WELLS
NEXT NAME? CAREY
NEXT NAME? WEST
NEXT NAME? NEILS
NEXT NAME? ASHTON
NEXT NAME? NASH
NEXT NAME? TURNER
NEXT NAME? COMPTON
NEXT NAME? BURNS
NEXT NAME? EDGE
NEXT NAME? NUNN
NEXT NAME? PRIEST
NEXT NAME? DOYLE
NEXT NAME? SCALES
NEXT NAME? WATERS
NEXT NAME? GRANT
NEXT NAME? BANKS
NEXT NAME? PURVISS
NEXT NAME? TEELE
NEXT NAME? WATTS
NEXT NAME? ICKERY
NEXT NAME? ZZZZ
USDATA2 HAS BEEN SAVED
```

Exercise 2

```
10 REM **ACCESS A DATA FILE**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 INPUT "NAME OF THE DATA FILE";G$
40 OPEN 1,1,0,G$
59 INPUT#1,A$
60 IF A$="ZZZZ" THEN 90
70 PRINT A$
80 GOTO 50
90 CLOSE 1
```

Program 8

RUN
NAME OF THE DATA FILE? USDATA2
BARR
SHIPTON
HOWSON
WELLS
CAREY
WEST
NEILS
ASHTON
NASH
TURNER
COMPTON
BURNS
EDGE
NUNN
PRIEST
DOYLE
SCALES
WATERS
GRANT
BANKS
PURVISS
TEELE
WATTS
ICKERY

Exercise 3

```
10 REM **ACCESS A DATA FILE**  
20 PRINT CHR$(147)  
30 INPUT "NAME OF THE DATA FILE";G$  
40 OPEN 1,1,0,G$  
50 INPUT#1,AS  
60 IF AS="ZZZZ" THEN 100  
70 IF LEFT$(AS,1)<>"N" THEN 50  
80 PRINT AS  
90 GOTO 50  
100 CLOSE 1
```

RUN
READ — TAPE PROGRAM
NAME IF DATA FILE? USDATA2
PRESS PLAY ON TAPE
OK
FILE OPEN
NEILS
NASH
NUNN
READY.

Program 9

Exercise 4

```
10 REM **ACCESS A DATA FILE**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 DIM B$(50) _____ dimension the list
40 C=1 _____ initialise the index for the list
50 INPUT "NAME OF THE DATA FILE";GS
60 OPEN 1,1,0,GS
70 INPUT#1,A$
80 B$(C)=A$
90 IF A$="ZZZZ" THEN 120
100 C=C+1 _____ increment only if EOF
110 GOTO 70 _____ marker is not found
120 CLOSE 1
130 N=C
140 FOR I=1 TO N-1 _____ so the final count of C is the
150 PRINT I,B$(I) _____ length of the list
160 NEXT I
```

Program 10

```
RUN
NAME OF THE DATA FILE? USDATA2
```

```
1      BARR
2      SHIPTON
3      HOWSON
4      WELLS
5      CAREY
6      WEST
7      NEILS
8      ASHTON
9      NASH
10     TURNER
11     COMPTON
12     BURNS
13     EDGE
14     NUNN
15     PRIEST
16     DOYLE
17     SCALES
18     WATERS
19     GRANT
20     BANKS
21     PURVISS
22     TEELE
23     WATTS
24     ICKERY
```

Exercise 5

Instead of the print routine of lines 410-500 of Program 3, we have to write a create routine as follows (lines 300 to 500 of the following program)

```
10  REM **ACCESS A DATA FILE**
20  PRINT CHR$(147)
30  DIM X$(50)
40  C=1
50  INPUT "NAME OF THE DATA FILE";GS
60  OPEN 1,1,0,GS
70  INPUT#1,AS
80  X$(C)=AS
90  IF AS="ZZZZ" THEN 120
100 C=C+1
110 GOTO 70
120 CLOSE 1
130 REM **END OF ACCESS**
140 REM **N IS THE LENGTH OF THE LIST**
150 N=C
200 REM *****
210 REM **SORT ROUTINE**
220 FOR K=1 TO N-1
230 FOR L=K+1 TO N
240 IF X$(L)>=X$(K) THEN 280
250 T$=X$(L)
260 X$(L)=X$(K)
270 X$(K)=T$
280 NEXT L
290 NEXT K
300 REM **END OF SORT ROUTINE**
400 REM *****
410 REM **CREATE A DATA FILE**
420 INPUT "NAME FOR THE DATA FILE";FS
430 OPEN 1,1,1,FS
440 FOR P=1 TO N
450 AS=X$(P)
460 PRINT#1,AS
470 NEXT P
480 CLOSE 1
490 PRINT FS;" HAS BEEN SAVED"
500 REM *****
```

```
RUN
NAME OF THE DATA FILE? USDATA2
NAME FOR THE DATA FILE? SDATA
SDATA HAS BEEN SAVED
```

Program 11

To test whether it has been successful we can load and run the access program for the file SDATA.

```
NAME OF THE DATA FILE? SDATA
ASHTON
BANKS
BARR
```


BURNS
CAREY
COMPTON
DOYLE
EDGE
GRANT
HOWSON
ICKERY
NASH
NEILS
NUNN
PRIEST
PURVISS
SCALES
SHIPTON
TEELE
TURNER
WATERS
WATTS
WELLS
WEST

Exercise 6

```
10 REM **ACCESS FOR SEARCH**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 DIM N$(50)
40 C=1
50 PRINT "READ-TAPE PROGRAM"
60 INPUT "NAME OF THE DATA FILE";GS
70 OPEN 1,1,0,GS
80 PRINT "FILE OPEN"
90 PRINT
100 INPUT#1,A$
110 LET N$(C)=A$
120 IF A$="ZZZZ" THEN 150
130 C=C+1
140 GOTO 90
150 CLOSE 1
160 REM **END OF ACCESS**
170 REM **N IS THE LENGTH OF THE LIST**
180 N=C
190 REM *****
200 INPUT "QUERY NAME";QS
210 REM **START OF SEARCH**
220 L=1
230 H=N
240 IF H-L=7 THEN 500
250 M=INT((L+H)/2)
260 IF QS=N$(M) THEN 320
270 IF QS<N$(M) THEN 300
280 L=M
```

access

bisection search

```

290 GOTO 240
300 H=M
310 GOTO 240
320 REM **END OF SEARCH**
330 PRINT "YES ";Q$;" IS IN THE LIST"
350 GOTO 600
500 PRINT Q$; "IS NOT IN THE LIST"
600 PRINT "END OF SEARCH"

```

print routine

Program 12

```

RUN
NAME OF THE DATA FILE? SDATA ----- The sorted data file. (We
QUERY NAME? HOWSON                      couldn't use the bisection
YES HOWSON IS IN THE LIST                 search on the unsorted file.)
END OF SEARCH
RUN
NAME OF THE DATA FILE? SDATA
QUERY NAME? SMITH
SMITH IS NOT IN THE LIST
END OF SEARCH

```

Note: We have combined an access program with the bisection search program of Unit 8, and it works. To make the program foolproof, however, we must be careful about its limits: remember N\$(1)="AAAA" and N\$(N)="ZZZZ" in Unit 8! We deal with the problem in Program 5.

Exercise 7

```

10 REM **ACCESS A DATA FILE**
20 PRINT CHR$(147)
30 DIM A$(30,30)
40 INPUT "NO. OF ROWS AND COLS";R,C
50 INPUT "NAME OF THE DATA FILE";G$
60 OPEN 1,1,0,G$
70 FOR I=1 TO R
80 FOR J=1 TO C
90 INPUT#1, B$
100 A$(I,J)=B$
110 IF B$="ZZZZ" THEN 140
120 NEXT J
130 NEXT I
140 CLOSE 1
150 REM *****
160 FOR I=1 TO R
170 FOR J=1 TO C
180 PRINT TAB(10*(J-1));A$(I,J);
190 NEXT J
200 PRINT
210 NEXT I
220 END

```

Program 13

Run on SDATA

RUN

NO. OF ROWS AND COLUMNS? 6 , 4

NAME OF THE DATA FILE? SDATA

ASHTON

CAREY

GRANT

NEILS

SCALES

WATERS

BANKS

COMPTON

HOWSON

NUNN

SHIPTON

WATTS

BARR

DOYLE

ICKERY

PRIEST

TEELE

WELLS

BURNS

EDGE

NASH

PURVISS

TURNER

WEST

READY.

Course comments

Please let us know what you think of this course to help us improve future editions of it. We would especially like to know of any problems you have had in getting particular programs to run on your micro.

Make of microcomputer M027

Name

Address

.....

.....

Correspondence Edition

Are you studying by yourself and need help?

Look for the 1980 edition of the correspondence edition. It will be available in the summer of 1980. The correspondence edition is a new way of learning. It is a self-paced program that allows you to study at your own speed. You can study at home or in a classroom. You can study at your own pace. You can study at your own time. You can study at your own place. You can study at your own cost. You can study at your own level. You can study at your own rate. You can study at your own pace. You can study at your own time. You can study at your own place. You can study at your own cost. You can study at your own level. You can study at your own rate.

To order, send us the following details:

NAME	_____
ADDRESS	_____
CITY	_____
STATE	_____
ZIP	_____
DATE OF BIRTH	_____
TELEPHONE	_____
MAILING ADDRESS	_____
NAME	_____

Complete 1980 field study materials available at \$19.95.

Also available

Classics

Two courses in the field study program. The first course is a self-paced study of the history of the world. The second course is a self-paced study of the history of the United States.

Five notes

Five notes on the field study program. The first note is on the history of the world. The second note is on the history of the United States. The third note is on the history of the world. The fourth note is on the history of the United States. The fifth note is on the history of the world.

Western Branch College
19 Franklin Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02142

Correspondence tuition

Are you studying by yourself and need help?

If you are, enrol now with NEC as a correspondence student on 30 Hour BASIC. We will give you a correspondence tutor with experience of your make of microcomputer. He will then take you through the course, marking and commenting on your assignments and giving you any advice you need on getting the programs in 30 Hour BASIC to run on your micro.

To enrol, send us the following details:

Name
Address
.....
Postcode
Tel. No.
Date of birth
Microcomputer you are using
M027

Course fee: £50 (44 if you already have a copy of 30 Hour BASIC).

Also available

Cassettes

Two cassettes of the main programs in 30 Hour BASIC. Price £5.95 inc. p & p and VAT each. (Specify BBC or Acorn Electron) two.

Free notes

30 Hour BASIC needs small adaptations for use on certain microcomputers. If you are having problems getting our programs to work on your machine, send us a stamped addressed envelope with the make and model of your microcomputer written clearly on the inside of the envelope flap. We'll send you a sheet of notes on getting 30 Hour BASIC programs to run on your computer.

National Extension College,
18 Brooklands Avenue, Cambridge CB2 2HN.



30 Hour BASIC COMMODORE 64 edition

What is BASIC?

Microcomputers are the tool of the 80's. BASIC is the language that all of them use. So the sooner you learn BASIC, the sooner you will understand the microcomputer revolution.

30 Hour Basic is a simple self-instructional course on the language of microcomputers. But programs need more than language: they need structure as well. So the course also teaches you good programming techniques. You'll learn how to keep, order and sort files, records and directories; how to print letters and addresses; how to invent your own computer games; how to handle numbers and so on.

Commodore 64

This is the edition specially written with the needs of the Commodore 64 user in mind. A standard edition, and editions for the Spectrum, ZX81, Oric, Electron and Dragon are also available.



£6.95 ISBN 0 86082 455 1